Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012. http://dx.doi.org/10.1351/PAC-REC-11-06-03 © 2012 IUPAC, Publication date (Web): 16 February 2012

IUPAC glossary of terms used in immunotoxicology (IUPAC Recommendations 2012)*

Douglas M. Templeton^{1,‡}, Michael Schwenk², Reinhild Klein³, and John H. Duffus⁴

¹Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathobiology, University of Toronto, Toronto, Canada; ²In den Kreuzäckern 16, Tübingen, Germany; ³Immunopathological Laboratory, Department of Internal Medicine II, Otfried-Müller-Strasse, Tübingen, Germany; ⁴The Edinburgh Centre for Toxicology, Edinburgh, Scotland, UK

Abstract: The primary objective of this "Glossary of Terms Used in Immunotoxicology" is to give clear definitions for those who contribute to studies relevant to immunotoxicology but are not themselves immunologists. This applies especially to chemists who need to understand the literature of immunology without recourse to a multiplicity of other glossaries or dictionaries. The glossary includes terms related to basic and clinical immunology insofar as they are necessary for a self-contained document, and particularly terms related to diagnosing, measuring, and understanding effects of substances on the immune system. The glossary consists of about 1200 terms as primary alphabetical entries, and Annexes of common abbreviations, examples of chemicals with known effects on the immune system, autoantibodies in autoimmune disease, and therapeutic agents used in autoimmune disease and cancer. The authors hope that among the groups who will find this glossary helpful, in addition to chemists, are toxicologists, pharmacologists, medical practitioners, risk assessors, and regulatory authorities. In particular, it should facilitate the worldwide use of chemistry in relation to occupational and environmental risk assessment.

Keywords: biomedical applications; chemistry education; immune sensitization; immunosuppression; immunotoxicology; IUPAC Chemistry and Human Health Division; toxicology; toxicity testing.

CONTENTS

PREFACE MEMBERSHIP OF SPONSORING BODY ACKNOWLEDGMENTS ALPHABETICAL ENTRIES REFERENCES

^{*}Sponsoring body: IUPAC Chemistry and Human Health Division: see more details on page 1115.

[‡]Corresponding author: address: Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathobiology, University of Toronto, 1 King's College Circle, Toronto, Ont. M5S 1A8, Canada; E-mail: doug.templeton@utoronto.ca

ANNEX I:	ABBREVIATIONS
ANNEX II:	LIST OF CHEMICALS WITH KNOWN EFFECTS ON THE IMMUNE SYSTEM
ANNEX III:	SOME MOST RELEVANT AUTOANTIBODIES IN AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE
ANNEX IV:	THERAPEUTIC AGENTS (MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES OR FUSION PRO-
	TEINS) FOR HUMAN AUTOIMMUNE DISORDERS AND TUMORS

PREFACE

A major goal of IUPAC is to promote "regulation, standardization, or codification" globally in relevant areas of chemistry. To this end, the Chemistry and Human Health Division, recognizing the importance of toxicology to chemists, produced the "Glossary of Terms Used in Toxicology, 2nd ed.", in 2007 [i]. That glossary was intended to provide clear and concise definitions for a range of terms in toxicology and toxicokinetics, primarily for chemists who find themselves working in toxicology or requiring a working knowledge of the subject. It was also recognized that other scientists, regulators, and managers must from time to time interpret toxicological information, and it was hoped that the glossary would also provide them with ready access to internationally accepted definitions of relevant terms. A number of subspecialties broaden the scope of toxicology, and in 2009 the Division expanded the collection of available definitions with publication of "Glossary of Terms Used in Ecotoxicology" [ii].

Several years ago, the Division initiated a project to evaluate mechanisms by which metals cause immune sensitization in individuals, and subsequently to evaluate critically various immunological tests for their reliability in determining clinical sensitization to various metals. This project resulted in a series of IUPAC technical reports [iii–vii]. During the course of this work, it became evident that immunotoxicology rests upon a specialized vocabulary that incorporates terms from both immunology and toxicology, sometimes combining them in unique ways. Thus, it was decided to expand further the list of definitions available to the chemical community and other interested parties by producing a "Glossary of Terms Used in Immunotoxicology". The present document is the result. In order to minimize the reader's time in consulting additional texts, terms from [i] were included when it was felt that they were used with particular frequency in immunotoxicology. The authors have also exercised judgment in deciding which terms from basic immunology should be included for the reader's convenience.

In general, American spelling has been adopted for the entry terms, thus hemolytic anemia, edema, and tumor (not haemolytic anaemia, oedema, and tumour). Further, somewhat arbitrary decisions must be made in listing alternative forms of terms as the main entry (e.g., heterophilic antibody vs. heterophile antibody). In particular, many terms begin with immune or immuno- (e.g., immune elimination as part of the process of immunoediting). We have generally tried to use the form we find to be in most common usage, but if a desired entry is not found under one construction, it should be sought under the other.

Many definitions have been compiled from earlier sources, with or without modification, as indicated in the citation. When no citation is given, the term is newly defined. When a citation is given, the definition is more or less a quotation from the original. With the qualification "After", the general concept of the original has been retained with some rewording, often for consistency with IUPAC guidelines for glossaries. "Modified from" implies a concept specific to the source is retained but put into original wording. When a citation is indented following a *Note*, it refers only to the *Note*. The document has been put together with invaluable input from many colleagues and expert reviewers. Where flaws remain, they are the responsibility of the authors.

- i. J. H. Duffus, M. Nordberg, D. M. Templeton. Pure Appl. Chem. 79, 1153 (2007).
- ii. M. Nordberg, D. M. Templeton, O. Andersen, J. H. Duffus. Pure Appl. Chem. 81, 829 (2009).
- iii. D. M. Templeton. Pure Appl. Chem. 76, 1255 (2004).
- iv. R. Klein, M. Schwenk, R. Heinrich-Ramm, D. M. Templeton. Pure Appl. Chem. 76, 1269 (2004).
- v. R. Klein, M. Schwenk, D. M. Templeton. Pure Appl. Chem. 78, 2155 (2006).

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

vi. M. Schwenk, R. Klein, D. M. Templeton. Pure Appl. Chem. 80, 1349 (2008).

vii. M. Schwenk, R. Klein, D. M. Templeton. Pure Appl. Chem. 81, 153 (2009).

MEMBERSHIP OF SPONSORING BODY

Membership of the Chemistry and Human Health Division Committee of during the preparation of this report (2009–2011) was as follows:

President: D. M. Templeton (Canada, 2008–2011); *Secretary*: M. Schwenk (Germany, 2010–2011); *Members*: O. Andersen (Denmark, 2008–2011); S. Bachurin (Russia, 2010–2013); D. Buckle (UK, 2010–2013); X. Fuentes-Arderiu (Spain, 2008–2011); P. Illing (UK, 2010–2013); Y. Martin (USA, 2010–2013), T. Nagano (Japan, 2010–2013); F. Pontet (France, 2008–2013).

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We gratefully acknowledge the helpful suggestions of Profs. Ian Kimber, Jack Uetrecht, Charlotte Esser, and Ulrich Sack, who read carefully a draft of the document. We also thank members of the IUPAC ICTNS for their thorough reading, and the very astute comments of the anonymous external reviewers. The aggregate of these inputs has resulted in a document superior to that which could have been achieved by the authors alone.

ALPHABETICAL ENTRIES

α:β T cell

Lymphocyte whose *T-cell receptor (TCR)* is a heterodimer of an α chain and a β chain.

Note: $\alpha:\beta$ T cells represent the majority of *thymocytes* in the *thymus* and *T cells* in the periphery.

See also $\alpha:\beta$ *T-cell receptor*, $\gamma:\delta$ *T cell*.

α:β T-cell receptor

T-cell receptor (TCR) consisting of a heterodimer of two different glycoprotein chains, designated α and β , assembled into an α : β heterodimer.

α-fetoprotein (AFP)

Serum protein, related to serum albumin in evolution, abundant in the fetus and reoccurring in the serum in liver cancer.

Note: It has various immunomodulating and immunosuppressive effects.

ABL oncogene

Gene resulting from a chromosomal translocation (9;22) that fuses sequences from the BCR (breakpoint cluster region) gene with the ABL gene.

- *Note 1*: This translocation creates the *Philadelphia chromosome*, found in most human patients with *chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)*.
- *Note 2*: The fusion protein encoded by BCR-ABL possesses unregulated *tyrosine kinase* activity.
- *Note 3*: The term ABL derives from the Abelson murine leukemia virus, from which the gene was first isolated.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

ABO blood group system

System of antigens expressed on erythrocytes and used for typing human blood for transfusion.

Note: Individuals who do not express A or B antigens on their erythrocytes naturally form *antibodies* against them.

See also *blood group*.

abzyme

Antibody or antibody construct with catalytic activity.

accessory cell

Cell that assists in the *adaptive immune response* but does not directly mediate specific *antigen* recognition.

Note 1: Such cells include phagocytes, mast cells, dendritic cells, and NK cells.

Note 2: The term is often used to describe *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)*.

accessory molecule

Molecule other than *immunoglobulin (Ig)*, *T-cell receptor (TCR)*, or *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* that participates in *T lymphocyte* recognition and response to *antigen*.

acquired immunity

State of protection against pathogen-induced injury, with rapid *immune elimination* of pathogenic invaders owing to previous *immunization* or *vaccination*. [1]

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)

Disease caused by infection with the *human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)*, assuming clinical relevance when an infected patient has lost most of his/her CD4+T cells, so that infections with opportunistic pathogens occur.

activation

See lymphocyte activation, neutrophil activation.

activation-induced cell death

Process by which *immune responses* end in the death of most of the responding *lymphocytes*, leaving only a small number of resting *memory cells*. See also *apoptosis*.

active immunization

Immunization with *antigen*, as distinct from the transfer of *antibody* to an unimmunized individual, which is called *passive immunization*.

active systemic anaphylaxis (ASA) test

Test for determining whether a drug can cause *anaphylactic reactions* in an animal following *immunization* with the drug.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

acute lymphoblastic (lymphocytic) leukemia (ALL)

Highly aggressive, undifferentiated form of *lymphoid* malignancy derived from a progenitor cell that is thought to be able to give rise to both *T*- and *B-cell* lineages.

Note: Most of these *leukemias* show partial differentiation toward the B-cell lineage (so-called B-ALL) whereas a minority show features of T cells (T-ALL).

After [2]

acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)

Cancer characterized by rapid growth of abnormal granulocytes that accumulate in the bone marrow.

acute-phase protein

Serum protein, mostly produced in the liver, which rapidly changes in concentration (some acute-phase proteins increase, some decrease) during the initiation of an *inflammatory response*. [3]

acute-phase response (APR)

Physiological response stimulated by *cytokines* including *interleukin*-1, interleukin-6, *interferons*, and *tumor necrosis factor (TNF)*, characterized by increased vascular permeability, fever, and increased levels of proteins (thus called *acute-phase proteins*) such as *C-reactive protein (CRP)*, occurring within a few hours of initiation.

Note: Infection, *inflammation*, tissue injury, and occasionally neoplasms may trigger the APR.

acute rejection

Rejection of a tissue or organ *graft* from a genetically unrelated donor, typically occurring within 10 to 13 days of *transplantation*.

After [2]

acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)

Acute lung failure characterized by alveolar and interstitial *edema*, perivascular pulmonary edema, and hyaline membrane formation, resulting from a variety of underlying diseases that result in increased pulmonary vascular permeability.

adaptive immune response

Immune response based on the principle of clonal recognition, such that upon first exposure to an *anti-gen*, primed *lymphocytes* either differentiate into immune effector cells or form an expanded pool of *memory cells* that respond to secondary exposure to the same antigen by mounting an amplified and more rapid response.

Note: The response may be classified as cellular (*T cell*-mediated) or *humoral* (*antibody*-dependent).

adaptive immune system

Part of the *immune system* responsible for the *adaptive immune response*.

Addison disease (autoimmune)

Adrenocortical hypofunction characterized by hypotension, weight loss, anorexia, and weakness. The most common form is *idiopathic* Addison disease, mediated by *autoimmune* mechanisms. *Autoantibodies* specific to the adrenal cortex are specific diagnostic markers of this form.

Note: 21-Hydroxylase, a cytochrome P450 steroidogenic enzyme, is one of the major targets of adrenal autoantibodies in idiopathic Addison disease as well as in Addison disease in the context of autoimmune polyglandular syndromes (*polyendocrinopathies, auto-immune*). Hypofunction or failure of the adrenal gland may also be a manifestation of *antiphospholipid syndrome* due to thrombosis of the blood vessels of the adrenal glands.

After [1]

addressin

Extracellular protein of the venular *endothelium* serving as a *ligand* to a *homing receptor* for *lymphocytes*.

Note: Addressins are glycoproteins recognized by *L-selectin*.

adenosine deaminase (ADA) deficiency

Lack of the enzyme adenosine deaminase (ADA), which catalyzes the deamination of adenosine and deoxyadenosine to produce inosine and deoxyinosine, respectively. Affected individuals have a form of *severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)*.

adhesion molecule

Molecule belonging mainly to the *immunoglobulins*, *integrin superfamily* (e.g., LFA-1, ICAM-1) or *selectins*, expressed on the cell membrane of various cells including those of the *immune system*. Interaction of adhesion molecules with each other as *receptor* and corresponding *ligand* facilitates cooperation (cross-talk) of cells, *signal transduction*, and information transfer between cells. After [4]

adjuvant

- 1. In pharmacology, a substance added to a drug to speed or increase the action of the main component.
- 2. In *immunology*, a substance (such as aluminum hydroxide) or a suspension in oil of a dead organism (such as fragments of killed <u>Mycobacterium</u>) that increases the response to an *antigen*.

See also *Freund's adjuvant*. After [5]

adjuvant arthritis

Experimental model of *immunopathology* with features of *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, induced in rats by injection with bacterial products, which may be used to study anti-inflammatory (see *inflammation*) therapies.

adoptive transfer

Transfer, by transplantation of immunocompetent cells, of the capacity to mount an immune response.

adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)

See acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).

adverse drug reaction

Appreciably harmful or unpleasant reaction resulting from an intervention related to the administration of a pharmaceutical product. After [6]

adverse effect

Change in biochemistry, physiology, growth, development, morphology, behavior, or lifespan of an organism that results in impairment of functional capacity, impairment of capacity to compensate for additional stress, or an increase in susceptibility to other environmental influences. [5]

adverse immunostimulation

Antigen-non-specific, inappropriate, or unintended activation of a component of the immune system.

The distinction from *pseudoallergy* is subtle. Note:

aeroallergen

Any airborne particle, such as a pollen grain or spore, that triggers an *allergic* reaction in sensitive individuals.

affinity

intrinsic affinity Strength of binding (affinity constant) between a receptor (e.g., one antigen-binding site on an antibody) and a ligand (e.g., epitope on an antigen). See also avidity. [3]

affinity chromatography

Chromatography in which immobilized antibody (or antigen) is used to select specific antigen (or antibody) from a mixture. The purified *ligand* is then released by disrupting the antibody-antigen interaction, e.g., by changing the pH. After [3]

affinity maturation

Increase in *antibody affinity* for an *antigen* observed as the *humoral immune response* progresses.

agammaglobulinemia

See X-linked agammaglobulinemia.

agglutination

Clumping of particles, such as *erythrocytes* or bacteria, caused by bivalent binding of *antibodies* to *anti*gens on the surfaces of adjacent particles.

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

Note: When the particles are erythrocytes, the phenomenon is called hemagglutination. See also *hemagglutinin*, *prozone effect*.

agranulocytosis

Failure of the bone marrow to make sufficient granulocytes, especially neutrophils.

Note: This is normally identified by a *neutrophil* count less than 0.5×10^9 per litre of blood.

allele

One of several alternate forms of a gene that occur at the same relative position (locus) on homologous chromosomes and which become separated during meiosis and can be recombined following fusion of gametes.

[5]

allelic exclusion

Phenomenon whereby, following successful rearrangement of one *allele* of an *antigen receptor* gene, rearrangement of the other parental allele is suppressed, thereby ensuring each *lymphocyte* expresses only a single specificity of antigen receptor.

Note: This does not occur for α chains in *T lymphocytes*.

allergen

Immunostimulant (see *immunostimulation*) *antigenic* substance that may or may not cause a clinically significant effect but which is capable of producing an immune reaction, often *immediate-type hypersensitivity*.

After [5] See also *contact allergen*.

allergic

Immunologically hypersensitive. See also *hypersensitivity*.

allergy

Symptoms or signs occurring in sensitized individuals (see *sensitization*) following exposure to a previously encountered substance (*allergen*) that would otherwise not cause such symptoms or signs in non-sensitized individuals. The most common forms of allergy are *rhinitis*, *urticaria*, *asthma*, and *contact dermatitis*.

Note: Except in the case of *contact allergens*, it is often an *immunoglobulin E (IgE)-mediated hypersensitivity*, e.g., asthma, *eczema*, *hay fever*, or food allergy.

alloantibody

Antibody produced against an *antigen* from another member of the same species. See also *alloantigen*.

1120

alloantigen

Antigen, present in some but not all individuals of a particular species, that arises from polymorphisms at the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* loci and stimulates intense reactions to *allograft* tissues from other individuals of the same species that do not produce it.

Note: The human *ABO blood group* system antigens and *Rhesus (Rh) factor* are important examples of alloantigens.

allogeneic

allogenic

Genetically different, referring to individuals of the same species.

Note: In *immunotoxicology* this generally refers to the use of genetically dissimilar cells to elicit a *cell-mediated immune response* in in vitro assays.

allograft

Tissue or organ *graft* between *allogeneic* individuals. [3]

allotype

Allelic variant of an *antigen* that, because it is not present in all individuals, may be *immunogenic* in members of the same species that have a different version of the *allele*. [3]

alloreactivity

Reactivity of an antibody with an alloantigen.

alopecia

Loss of hair.

Note: Often associated with *autoimmune disease* [e.g., autoimmune thyroid diseases, *pernicious anemia*, *Addison disease*, *diabetes mellitus type 1*, or *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*].

After [1]

alternative pathway (of complement activation)

Activation pathway involving *complement* components C3, Factor B, Factor D, and *properdin* that, in the presence of a stabilizing activator surface such as microbial polysaccharide, generates the alternative pathway C3 convertase C3bBb.

[3]

See also classical pathway (of complement activation).

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

alveolar macrophage

Macrophage found in the lung alveoli; it may remove and sometimes retain inhaled particulate matter.

alveolitis

- 1. Inflammation of alveoli.
- 2. Inflammation of a tooth socket.

alveolitis, exogen allergic

See atypical interstitial pneumonia.

amyloid

Fibrous protein secreted into the extracellular space where it forms amorphous deposits in multiple organs in some pathological states.

Note: Amyloid beta ($A\beta$) is found in neuronal plaques in the brain in Alzheimer disease.

anamnestic

Describing *immunological memory* that gives rise to a rapid increase in *immunological response* after reexposure to *antigen*.

Note: Literally, "does not forget".

After [7]

anaphylactic shock

Immediate overreaction of the *immune system* to a drug or other agent in an individual who has previously encountered the agent and has produced *antibodies* to that agent.

Note: The major manifestation of anaphylactic shock is *angioedema*, which leads to hypovalemia, obstruction of the airway, and bronchospasm; these in turn may lead to coma or death.

See also anaphylaxis.

anaphylactoid

Of or resembling anaphylaxis.

anaphylatoxin

Complement-derived protein fragment (e.g., C3a, C4a, or C5a) capable of directly triggering *mast cell degranulation, chemotaxis,* smooth muscle contraction, and *inflammation*.

anaphylaxis

Life-threatening *type I hypersensitivity allergic reaction* (see *allergy*) occurring in a person or animal exposed to an *antigen* or *hapten* to which they have previously been sensitized.

Note: Consequences of the reaction may include *angioedema*, vascular collapse, shock (see *anaphylactic shock*), and respiratory distress.

[5]

© 2012, IUPAC

1122

ANCA-associated vasculitis

See antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody-associated vasculitis.

anemia

Decrease in the number of *erythrocytes* or total hemoglobin in the blood that results in a decrease in the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood.

anergy

Lack of an *immune response*, usually taken as lack of response to common recall antigens.

Note: The failure of *B* or *T cells* to proliferate in response to defined *autoantigens* (*clonal anergy*) is a primary mechanism of *self-tolerance*.

After [1]

angioedema

angioneurotic edema

Swelling that occurs in the tissue just below the surface of the skin, most often around the lips and eyes, the mucous membranes and occasionally the viscera.

- *Note 1*: It may be genetic, when it is referred to as hereditary angioedema (HAE), but is more usually caused by an *allergic* reaction to either food or medication, and is then called acquired angioedema (AAE).
- *Note 2*: Angioedema may take from minutes to hours to develop. Severe angioedema can compromise the airway, and can be life-threatening.
- *Note 3*: Angioedema is often associated with dermatographism, *urticaria*, *erythema*, and *purpura*. It may sometimes be a sign of a condition such as *leukemia* or *Hodgkin disease*.
- *Note 4*: Angioedema is similar to *hives*, but hives involve itchy red welts on the surface of the skin, whereas angioedema is a deeper swelling under the skin.

ankylosing spondylitis

Chronic inflammatory disease affecting the spine, sacroiliac joints, and large peripheral joints, having a major genetic predisposition.

After [7]

antibody

Protein [*immunoglobulin* (*Ig*)] produced by the *immune system* in response to exposure to an *antigenic* molecule and characterized by its specific binding to a site on that molecule (*antigenic determinant* or *epitope*).

[5]

antibody, therapeutic

Antibody administered with the aim of treating a disease.

antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC)

antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

Cytotoxic reaction in which an *antibody*-coated *target cell* is directly killed by an *Fc receptor*-bearing *leukocyte*, e.g., *NK cell*, *macrophage*, *neutrophil*, or *eosinophil*. After [3]

antibody-forming cell (AFC) assay

hemolytic plaque assay Jerne plaque assay plaque-forming cell (PFC) assay Assay that measures the humor *presenting cells, T lymphocytes, a*

Assay that measures the humoral immune response mediated by the concerted actions of *antigen*presenting cells, *T lymphocytes*, and *B lymphocytes*, generally by determination of murine primary *IgM* or *IgG* antibodies directed against the T-cell-dependent sheep red blood cell (SRBC) surface antigens after in vivo sensitization.

Note: Due to involvement of multiple cell populations in mounting an antibody response, the AFC assay actually evaluates several immune parameters simultaneously. It is considered to be one of the most sensitive indicator systems for *immunotoxicology* studies.

[8]

antibody therapy

Use of an *antibody* to target specific cells (often tumor cells) or *signal transduction* pathways (often via *chemokines/cytokines*) in the treatment of disease.

Note: The main objectives are stimulation of the patient's *immune system* to attack malignant tumor cells and the prevention of tumor growth by blockage of specific cell *receptors*.

anticoagulant, lupus

antibody, lupus

Autoantibody that binds to phospholipids and/or proteins of the cell membrane in systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), and can interfere with blood clotting and tests of clotting function.

anti-DNA antibody

Antibody directed against single-stranded or double-stranded DNA. See also antinuclear antibody (ANA), systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE).

anti-erythrocyte antibody

Antibody against molecules of the red blood cell, usually against membrane proteins, causing lysis of the red blood cells.

Note: Maternal *IgG* antibodies specific for the *Rhesus (Rh) factor blood group antigen* expressed against the *erythrocytes* of the fetus may lead to hemolytic disease of the newborn.

See also *hemolytic anemia*.

antigen

Substance or a structural part (epitope) of a substance that is recognized by an antibody.

Note: It often causes the *immune system* to produce a specific *antibody* or specific cells and combines with a specific binding site (*paratope*) on the antibody or cells.

After [5]

antigen-binding groove

See antigen-presenting groove.

antigenic

Capable of stimulating lymphocytes to produce antibodies.

antigenic determinant

Single *antigenic* site (*epitope*) usually exposed on the surface of a complex *antigen*. [4]

antigenicity

Ability of an *antigen* to bind to a specific *antibody* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)*; often a measure of its ability to produce *immunity*.

antigen presentation

Display of *antigen* as peptide fragments bound to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules* on the surface of a cell.

Note: T cells recognize antigen only when it is presented in this way.

[7]

antigen-presenting cell (APC)

Cell, such as a *dendritic cell* or *macrophage*, that is responsible for making *antigens* accessible to *lymphocytes* and other immune effector and regulatory cells, making possible specific recognition by *receptors* on the cell surface.

Note: In a more restricted way, used to describe *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II*-positive cells (*accessory cells*) that internalize and degrade an antigen (generally by *phagocytosis*), before a fragment of the antigen molecule is presented on the APC cell surface in association with an MHC molecule. This complex is recognized by either *B cells* via surface-bound *immunoglobulin (Ig)* molecules, or by *T cells* via the *T-cell receptor (TCR)* for the antigen. Induction of a specific *immune response* then proceeds.

antigen-presenting groove

- 1. Pocket in a major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule that binds antigen for antigen presentation.
- 2. Hydrophobic binding region in the CD1 protein that anchors lipid-containing antigens causing exposure of the peptide or carbohydrate moiety in a position enabling *T-cell receptor (TCR)* contact.

antigen processing

Cleavage of protein antigens in antigen-presenting cells (APCs).

Note: The *immunogenic* peptides interact with the binding sites of *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II* products (exogenous antigens) or with those in *MHC class I* products (endogenous antigens, including viruses). The processed antigen-MHC complex is recognized by the *antigen receptor* complex of *T lymphocytes*.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Modified from [4] See also *antigen presentation*.

antigen receptor

Specific *antigen*-binding *receptor* on T or B *lymphocytes* that is transcribed and translated following rearrangements and translocation of V, D, and J genes. After [7]

antigen recognition

Ability of highly specialized proteins of the *immune system* to recognize *antigens* and specifically bind to them.

Note: Types of antigen recognition include that by *antibodies*, *T-cell receptors (TCRs)*, and *toll-like receptors (TLRs)*.

anti-idiotypic antibody

Antibody raised against antigenic determinants unique to the variable region of a single antibody. [2]

See also idiotope, idiotype, idiotypic network.

anti-isotypic antibody

Antibody against universal features of a given constant (C) region isotype (such as γ or μ) of one species that is made by immunizing a member of another species with that isotype.

Note: Such antibodies will bind any antibody of that isotype, and are thus useful for detecting bound antibody molecules in *immunoassays* and other applications.

[2]

antimitochondrial antibody (AMA)

Autoantibody producing a mitochondrial staining pattern on sections of various tissues and on tumor cell monolayers.

Note: According to the fluorescence pattern, different subtypes can be differentiated. Antimitochondrial antibodies of the subtype 2 (AMA-M2) are directed against *antigens* of three related 2-oxo acid dehydrogenase complexes (e.g., the E2 subunit of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex, PDC-E2) localized to the inner mitochondrial membrane. AMA-M2 is a specific marker of *primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)*.

After [1]

antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)

Antibody against antigens in the cytoplasm of neutrophils. See antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)-associated vasculitis.

antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)-associated vasculitis

One of a group of *autoimmune systemic* vasculitides associated with *antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies* (ANCAs), e.g., Wegener granulomatosis (WG), microscopic polyangiitis, and Churg–Strauss syndrome.

[1]

© 2012, IUPAC

1126

antinuclear antibody (ANA)

antinuclear factor (ANF)

Antibody, detectable in the blood, that has the capability of binding to a substance, e.g., DNA, within the nucleus of the cells.

Note: ANAs are found in patients whose *immune system* may be predisposed to cause *inflammation* against their own body tissues. ANAs indicate the possible presence of *auto-immunity* and are an indication of *autoimmune disease*, such as *rheumatoid arthritis* (RA), scleroderma, Sjögren syndrome, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), and mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD).

Modified from [4]

antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)

One of the most common *autoimmune diseases*, characterized by thrombosis, recurrent spontaneous abortions, and the presence of antiphospholipid *antibodies*.

Note: Antiphospholipid syndrome may occur as an isolated disease (primary APS) or in combination with another autoimmune disease, especially *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)* (secondary APS).

[1]

antiserum

The *blood serum* from an immune individual that contains *polyclonal antibodies* against the agent used for *immunization*.

anti-sheep red blood cell IgM response (SRBC) assay

Test to determine *T-cell*-dependent *antibody* response, usually by *enzyme-linked immonusorbent assay* (*ELISA*). Sheep red blood cells (SRBCs) are used as an *antigen*. Often referred to as the *plaque assay*.

Note: A similar test is often performed with the *tetanus toxoid* as the antigen.

antitoxin

Antibody specific for *exotoxins* produced by certain microorganisms such as the causative agents of diphtheria and tetanus.

[7]

APECED syndrome

See polyendocrinopathy, autoimmune.

aplastic anemia

Greatly decreased formation of *erythrocytes* and hemoglobin, usually associated with pronounced *granulocytopenia* and *thrombocytopenia*, as a result of hypoplastic or aplastic *bone marrow*. [9]

Note: The diagnosis requires *bone marrow* biopsy to demonstrate replacement of blood cell precursors with fat cells and rule out other causes of *pancytopenia* such as neoplastic infiltration.

apopto/sis (n), /tic (adj)

Active process of programmed cell death, requiring metabolic energy, often characterized by fragmentation of DNA and cell deletion without associated *inflammation*. [5]

appendix

Lymphoid tissue located at the beginning of the colon. See also *gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)*. [7]

arthritis

Inflammation of a joint or joints. See also *rheumatoid arthritis* (*RA*).

Arthus reaction

Gell and Coombs Type III reaction

Local *antibody*-mediated *hypersensitivity* reaction in which *antigen-antibody* complexes which fix *complement* are deposited in the walls of small vessels, often in the skin, causing acute *inflammation* with an infiltration of *neutrophils*.

See also Gell and Coombs classification.

assay

- 1. (n) Quantitative or qualitative analysis of a component of a sample.
- 2. (n) Results of a quantitative or qualitative analysis of a component of a sample.
- 3. (vb) To carry out quantitative or qualitative analysis of a component of a sample.

[5]

asthma

Chronic respiratory disease characterized by bronchoconstriction, excessive mucus secretion, and edema of the pulmonary alveoli, resulting in difficulty in exhaling, wheezing, and cough. [5]

ataxia telangiectasia (AT)

Disease characterized by staggering gait, multiple disorganized blood vessels, and an *immuno-deficiency*, associated with a protein called ataxia telangiectasia-mutated (ATM), a protein kinase thought to be important in detection of double-stranded DNA breaks. After [7]

atopic allergy

Immunoglobulin E (IgE)-mediated hypersensitivity, including asthma, eczema, hay fever, and food allergy. After [3] See also *atopy*.

atopic dermatitis

Inflammation of the skin in *atopic* individuals.

Note: The term is broader than *atopic eczema*.

After [4]

atopic eczema

Chronic skin disease, often localized on flexural surfaces, in individuals with propensity to develop *immunoglobulin* E(IgE)-mediated *allergy*.

Note: The term describes *eczema* occurring in *atopic* individuals and does not imply mechanisms.

After [4]

atop/y (n), /ic (adj)

Of, relating to, or caused by a hereditary predisposition toward developing certain *hypersensitivity* reactions, such as *hay fever*, *asthma*, or chronic *urticaria*, upon exposure to specific *antigens*.

attenuated vaccine

Vaccine made from a live organism that targets cells of the *immune system* but has been engineered or weakened so as not to cause disease.

See also inactivated vaccine, live attenuated vaccine.

atypical interstitial pneumonia

Acute or chronic respiratory distress in cattle, in the absence of toxemia or other *systemic* signs that are characteristic of other pneumonias.

- *Note 1*: The causes are unknown, but may include *allergic* reactions or toxicity due to conversion of *tryptophan* to toxic 3-methylindole by gut flora.
- *Note 2*: Also called bovine pulmonary emphysema, enzootic bovine adenomatosis, pulmonary adenomatosis, mold *hypersensitivity*, fog fever, and panters.

autoantibody

Immunoglobulin (Ig) antibody that is directed against the organism's own *antigen(s)*. After [1]

autoantigen

Antigenic component of an individual's tissues which may be a target of *autoimmune* responses by autoreactive *B cells (autoantibodies)* or *T cells*, including proteins (e.g., enzymes, structural proteins), glycoproteins (e.g., 2-glycoprotein I), nucleic acids, (e.g., double-stranded DNA), phospholipids (e.g., *cardiolipin*), and glycosphingolipids (e.g., gangliosides). See also *self-tolerance*.

After [1]

autochthonous

Pertaining to self.

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

autocrine

Type of signaling in which a cell secretes a chemical messenger that binds to *receptors* on the same cell, leading to changes in the cell.

See also paracrine.

autograft

Tissue transplant (see *transplantation*) from one site to another in an individual. After [7]

autoimmune

Of or relating to an *immune response* by the body against one of its own cells or tissues.

autoimmune disease

Pathological condition resulting when an organism produces *antibodies* or specific cells that bind to constituents of its own tissues (*autoantigens*) and cause tissue injury. Examples of such disease may include *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, *myasthenia gravis*, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, and *sclero-derma*.

[5]

autoimmune hemolytic anemia

Autoimmune disease in which antibodies initiate complement lysis of erythrocytes.

Note: Autoimmune hemolytic anemia may be *idiopathic*, secondary to lymphoproliferative, autoimmune [e.g., *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*], or chronic inflammatory disorders, postinfectious or drug-induced.

Modified from [1]

autoimmune hepatitis (AIH)

Chronic *autoimmune*-mediated hepatic *inflammation* usually characterized by *antinuclear (ANA)*, smooth muscle (SMA)/anti-F-actin, *liver-kidney microsomal (LKM)*, and/or soluble liver antigen (SLA) antibodies.

After [1]

autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS)

Canale–Smith syndrome

Disease characterized by *lymphadenopathy*, hepatosplenomegaly, *autoimmune cytopenias*, and *hyper-gammaglobulinemia*.

After [1]

autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome (APS) type 1 or 2

Heterogeneous group of rare diseases characterized by *autoimmune* activity against more than one endocrine organ, although non-endocrine organs can also be affected.

Note 1: Autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome, type 1 is known as the *candidiasis*-hypoparathyroidism-*Addison disease* syndrome after its main features:

© 2012, IUPAC

1130

- (a) A mild immune deficiency, leading to persistent *mucosal* and cutaneous infections with <u>Candida</u> yeasts. There is also decreased function of the *spleen* (asplenism).
- (b) Autoimmune dysfunction of the parathyroid gland (leading to hypocalcemia) and the adrenal gland (Addison disease).
- *Note 2*: Autoimmune polyendocrine syndrome, type 2 (also known as Schmidt syndrome) is more heterogeneous, occurs more often and has not been linked to one gene. Features of this syndrome are Addison disease, hypothyroidism (*Hashimoto thyroiditis*), and *diabetes mellitus type 1*. Patients are at a higher risk when they carry a particular *human leukocyte antigen (HLA)* genotype (e.g., DQ2, DQ8, and DRB1*0404).

autoimmune regulator (AIRE)

DNA-binding protein involved in immunoregulation (probably in the establishment and maintenance of *tolerance*).

[1]

autoimmunity

Immune response to "self" tissues or components.

Note: Such an immune response may have pathological consequences leading to *autoimmune diseases*.

See also autoantigen, self-antigen.

autoinflammatory disease

Unregulated *inflammation* without significant levels of *autoantibodies* or autoactivated T cells, or evidence of infection, but rather caused by genetic disturbance of the mechanisms that initiate and control inflammation.

autologous

From the same individual.

autologous antibody

Antibody derived from a specific individual, acting within that individual. See also *heterologous antibody*.

autophag/y (n), /ic (adj)

Digestion and breakdown in lysosomes of a cell's own proteins and/or organelles.

Note: It may be one route by which proteins can be processed for *antigen presentation*. See also *heterophagy, macroautophagy, microautophagy, mitophagy, pexophagy*.

autoreactivity

Immune response directed at self-antigens.

avidity functional affinity

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Binding strength between two molecules (e.g., *antibody* and *antigen*) taking into account the valency of the interaction. Thus the avidity will always be equal to or greater than the *affinity*. [3]

β₂-microglobulin

Small (12 kDa) protein forming part of the structure of *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* class *I*-encoded molecules.

Note: The presence of β_2 -microglobulin in urine is a common indicator of renal tubular dys-function.

B-1/B-2 cells

B-1/B-2 lymphocytes

Two major subpopulations of *B lymphocytes*.

- *Note 1*: The majority of *B cells* are B-2 which express low levels of surface IgM, higher levels of surface IgD, do not express CD5, and are CD43–, *CD23*+; they are directly generated from precursors in the *bone marrow*, and secrete highly specific antibody.
- Note 2: B-1 cells bear high levels of surface *immunoglobulin M (IgM)*, show lower levels of surface *immunoglobulin D (IgD)*, are CD43+/CD23-, and most express the cell surface *antigen* CD5. They are self-renewing, and frequently secrete high levels of *antibody* that binds to a range of antigens ("polyspecificity") with a relatively low *affinity*.

After [3]

B7 molecule

Co-stimulatory molecule (see *co-stimulation*) on the surface of *T-cell*-activating *antigen-presenting cells* (*APCs*), allowing full *activation* of T cells that are bound to *major histocompatibility complex* (*MHC*)-peptide complexes.

Note: Whereas binding of B7 molecules to CD28 is stimulatory, binding to *cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4)* decreases T-cell activity and participates in *tolerance*.

B cell

See *B lymphocyte*.

B-cell linker protein (BLNK)

Adaptor protein operating in *B cells* that, upon phosphorylation, recruits signaling molecules to membrane *lipid rafts*.

B-cell stimulatory factor (BSF)

Generic name given to *B-cell*-specific growth and differentiation factors involved in the *T-cell*-dependent *activation* of B cells. Many are now identified as specific *interleukins (ILs)*.

B-cell receptor (BCR)

Receptor on the surface of a *B cell* consisting of transmembrane *immunoglobulin (Ig)* that recognizes a specific *antigen*.

B lymphocyte

B cell

Bone marrow-derived *lymphocyte*, expressing an *antigen-receptor* complex composed of membranebound *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) and associated molecular chains.

Note: B-cell receptors (BCRs) interact with *epitopes* directly [no *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* restriction]. Mature activated B lymphocytes (*plasma cells*) produce *antibody* and are efficient *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)*.

After [4]

B-lymphocyte chemokine (CXCL13)

Chemokine that attracts *B* cells and activated *T* cells into the follicles of peripheral *lymphoid tissues*. After [2]

B-lymphocyte-induced maturation protein 1 (BLIMP-1)

Transcriptional repressor in *B cells*, that switches off genes required for B cell proliferation in the *ger-minal center*, and for *class switching* and *affinity maturation*.

Note: B cells in which BLIMP-1 is induced become *plasma cells*.

[2]

bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG)

Attenuated <u>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</u> used both as a specific *vaccine* for tuberculosis and as an *adjuvant*.

[3]

Note: Also used as an immunostimulant in cancer therapy (e.g., in bladder cancer).

BALB/c mouse

Inbred albino mouse strain, substrains of which produce *plasmacytomas* on injection with mineral oil, useful for the production of *monoclonal antibodies*.

bare lymphocyte syndrome (BLS)

Rare, recessive genetic condition in which the products of one or more genes required to switch on *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I* or *MHC class II* genes are defective or absent. As a consequence, MHC class I (BLS1) or MHC class II (BLS2) genes are not expressed, leading to severe *immunodeficiency*.

basophil

Type of *granulocyte* found in the blood and resembling the tissue *mast cell*. [3]

basophilic degranulation

Loss of granules in basophilic cells (see *basophil*), associated with the release of active substances from the cells, characteristic of *type I immediate hypersensitivity*.

Bcl-2

Member of the Bcl protein family that protects cells from *apoptosis* by binding to the mitochondrial membrane.

Note: It is encoded by the bcl-2 gene, which was discovered at the breakpoint of an oncogenic chromosomal translocation in *B-cell leukemia*.

After [2]

BCR-ABL

See ABL oncogene.

Behcet disease

Chronic vasculitis of unknown origin, characterized by ulcerations and skin rash and treated by *immunosuppression*.

Bence–Jones protein

Excess circulating kappa (K)-light chain found in the urine of patients with multiple myeloma.

benign monoclonal gammopathy

Nonmalignant overproduction of γ globulin by a single *clone* of lymphocytes.

biolistics

Use of small particles, e.g., colloidal gold, as a vehicle for carrying agents (drugs, nucleic acid, etc.) into a cell.

Note: Following coating with the desired agent(s), the particles are fired into the dermis of the recipient using a helium-powered gun.

[3]

biopanning

Technique for selection of peptides with high *affinity* binding to a chosen target.

bispecific antibody

Artificially produced hybrid *antibody* in which each of the two *antigen*-binding arms is specific for a different antigenic *epitope*. Such antibodies, which can be produced either by chemical cross-linkage or by recombinant DNA techniques, can be used to link together two different antigens or cells, e.g., a *cytotoxic T lymphocyte* and a tumor cell. [3]

blast

Immature stage in cell development, before the appearance of the definitive characteristics of the cell; used also as a word termination, as in erythroblast, etc.

blastogenesis assay

See lymphocyte transformation test (LTT).

© 2012, IUPAC

1134

Blau syndrome

Rare familial inflammatory disease characterized by arthritis, dermatitis, and uveitis.

blocking antibody

Antibody that prevents other antibodies from combining with a specific *antigen* but does not itself produce an *immunological response* when combined with that antigen.

blood-brain barrier

Physiological interface between brain tissues and circulating blood created by a mechanism that alters the permeability of brain capillaries, so that some substances are prevented from entering brain tissue, while other substances are allowed to enter freely.

Note: The blood-brain barrier normally keeps cells of the *immune system* outside the brain. After [5]

blood dyscrasia

Presence of abnormal material in the blood, usually applied to diseases affecting blood cells or *platelets*. [9]

blood group

blood type

Any of the various types of blood whose characteristic *erythrocyte* surface *antigens* determine compatibility in *transfusion*.

See also ABO blood group.

blood group antigen

Surface antigen on erythrocytes, detectable with a specific antibody from other individuals.

Note: The major blood group antigens ABO and Rh (Rhesus) are used in routine blood banking to type blood, but there are many other blood group antigens that can also be detected in *cross-matching*.

See also ABO blood group system, blood group, Rhesus (Rh) factor.

blood-placenta barrier

Physiological interface between maternal and fetal blood circulations that filters out some substances that could harm the fetus while favoring the passage of others such as nutrients.

- *Note 1*: Many fat-soluble substances such as alcohol are not filtered out, and several types of virus can also cross this barrier.
- *Note 2*: The effectiveness of the interface as a barrier varies with species and different forms of placentation.
- *Note 3: Immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies* are specifically transported across the barrier and reach the same levels in the newborn, as in the mother.

After [5]

blood plasma

See *plasma*.

1136

blood serum

See serum.

Bloom syndrome

Disease caused by mutations in a DNA helicase and characterized by low *T cell* numbers, reduced *antibody* levels, and an increased susceptibility to respiratory infections, cancer, and radiation damage. After [2]

bone marrow

Soft fatty vascular substance in the cavity of bone where blood cells are formed.

bone marrow transplantation

Transfer of *bone marrow* from a donor to a recipient whose bone marrow has been ablated.

- *Note 1*: Bone marrow transplantation is used to treat both non-neoplastic and neoplastic conditions not amenable to other forms of therapy.
- *Note 2*: It has been used especially in cases of *aplastic anemia*, *acute lymphoblastic (lymphocytic) leukemia (ALL)*, and *acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)*.

booster

Portion of an immunizing agent (see *immunization*) given at a later time to stimulate the effects of a previous dose of the same agent.

bradykinin

Vasoactive peptide and inflammatory mediator (see inflammation) produced at sites of tissue damage.

bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (BALT)

See mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT).

bronchial provocation test

Test of alteration of lung function induced by inhalation of an *allergen* or airway-constricting agent, providing information on bronchial responsiveness.

Bruton agammaglobulinemia

See X-linked agammaglobulinemia.

Buehler assay (BA)

Buehler test

Skin sensitization test for *contact allergic dermatitis* in which a test substance is applied to the shaved flank of a guinea pig in an occlusive patch for 6 h at 0, 1, and 2 weeks, followed by *challenge* of the untreated flank at 4 weeks.

bullous skin disease, autoimmune

Any of several *autoimmune diseases* characterized by intraepidermal or subepidermal blisters (e.g., *pemphigus vulgaris*, bullous pemphigoid) and highly specific *autoantibodies* against components of the desmosome or hemidesmosome (e.g., desmoglein 3, BP180). After [1]

Burkitt lymphoma

Lymphoma caused by Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), occurring mainly in sub-Saharan Africa.

bursa of Fabricius

Primary *lymphoid* organ in avian species, located at the cloacal-hind gut junction; it is the site of *B-cell* maturation.

[3]

bystander effect (in immunology)

Positive or negative effect on the *immune system* seen after exposure to certain drugs, radiation, and other agents, induced by non-immune mechanisms. See also *bystander suppression*.

bystander suppression

Suppression of an *immune response* to an *antigen* due to *tolerance* to an unrelated (hence bystander) antigen. See also *bystander effect*.

C1 esterase inhibitor

See C1 inhibitor.

C1 inhibitor

C1 esterase inhibitor

Plasma glycoprotein secreted primarily by the liver and acting as a serine proteinase inhibitor (serpin), inhibiting C1 components of the *complement system*.

Note 1: It also inhibits coagulation factors XI and XII and *kallikrein*.

Note 2: Patients with C1 inhibitor deficiency may manifest *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *glomerulonephritis*, or pyogenic infections.

See also hereditary angioneurotic edema.

CC chemokine

See chemokine.

CD1

Cell surface protein of *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)* involved in presentation of lipopeptide or glycolipid *antigens*.

See also antigen-presenting groove.

1138

CD3

Molecule composed of five polypeptide chains associated with the heterodimer *T-cell receptor (TCR)*, forming the T-cell receptor complex (TCR/CD3); CD3 transduces the activating signals when *antigen* binds to the TCR.

[1]

CD4

Cell surface *antigen* belonging to the *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) *superfamily* of molecules and a marker of *T helper cells*.

Note: As an adhesion molecule, it interacts with the non-polymorphic part of *major histo-compatibility complex (MHC) class II gene product.*

[1]

CD4+/CD25+ T cell

Subtype of CD4+ regulatory T cell (Treg) with potential role in the regulation of immune homeostasis.

Note 1: These cells seem to be important in preventing the development of *autoimmune diseases* (depletion leads to the spontaneous development of various autoimmune diseases in genetically susceptible animals; transfer prevents the development of organ-specific *autoimmunity*).

After [1]

Note 2: Activated (see *activation*) *T cells* may also have this phenotype. Treg cells may be further distinguished by positivity for a protein marker *Foxp3*.

CD5+ B lymphocyte

Lymphocyte of type B-1a, which is predominant in fetal lymphoid organs and in neonatal cord blood.

- Note 1: In adults, these cells range from 2 to 6 % of total mononuclear cells in peripheral blood. They utilize an *immunoglobulin (Ig) variable (V) gene* repertoire different from that of CD5– *B cells* and they produce *natural autoantibodies*.
- *Note 2*: The expansion of autoreactive B1-a cells has been reported in peripheral blood of patients with autoimmune diseases [e.g., *rheumatoid arthritis (RA), Sjögren syndrome, antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)*]. In RA these cells can account for up to 60 % of circulating B cells and may produce *rheumatoid factor*.

After [1]

CD8

Cell surface molecule belonging to the *immunoglobulin (Ig) superfamily* of molecules found, among others, on *cytotoxic T cells*, which binds to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules*. After [1]

CD8+ T suppressor cell

Outdated term for CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL, Tc). The term "suppressor T cell" is nowadays reserved for regulatory T cell (Treg).

CD16

Low-affinity Fc- γ receptor (Fc- γ -RIII) expressed mainly on natural killer (NK) cells, granulocytes, and macrophages, mediating antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). [4]

CD23

Low-affinity Fc-E receptor induced by interleukin-4 (IL-4) and expressed on activated B cells (see lymphocyte activation) and macrophages. [4]

CD25

 α -chain of the *interleukin*-2 (IL-2) receptor. [1]

CD40 ligand (CD40L)

Essential molecule for normal switching signaling through binding to CD40 on B cells. The interaction of CD40L and CD40 is also critical for optimal T cell function. See hyper immunoglobulin M (IgM) syndrome.

[1]

CD45

See leukocyte common antigen (LCA).

C domain

See constant (C) region.

C gene

See constant (C) gene.

C-reactive protein (CRP)

Serum protein produced by liver cells as part of the acute-phase response, which acts as a stimulus of the classical pathway of complement activation.

Note: CRP binds to the phosphorylcholine component of the C-polysaccharide, a component of the surface of many bacteria and fungi, resulting in opsonization for enhanced phagocytosis.

C region

See constant (C) region.

C-type lectin

Any of a large family of Ca²⁺-dependent *lectins*; members of this family share primary structural homology in their carbohydrate-recognition domains and include many endocytic receptors, many proteoglycans, and all known collectins and selectins.

Note: The C-type lectins are involved in many *immune system* functions, such as *inflamma-tion* and *immunity* to tumor and virally infected cells, whereas the *collectins* are involved in *innate immunity*.

After [10]

CXC chemokine

See chemokine.

CX₃C chemokine

See chemokine.

cadherin

Calcium-dependent, transmembrane glycoprotein occurring in cell-cell contacts (desmosomes) and functioning as an *adhesion molecule*.

Note: Cadherins may mediate *lymphocyte homing* and are also important elements in cellular *signal transduction*.

calcineurin inhibitor

Any member of a group of immunomodulating (see *immunomodulation*) drugs that bind to the cytosolic protein cyclophilin of T lymphocytes, thus inhibiting the phosphatase calcineurin, an inducer of *interleukin*-2 (IL-2) formation.

Note: Calcineurin inhibitors include potent immunomodulating drugs, such as cyclosporin, tacrolimus, pimecrolimus, and voclosporin (see Annex II).

Canale–Smith syndrome

See autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS).

candidiasis

candidosis

moniliasis

Infection with a fungus of the genus <u>Candida</u>, especially <u>C. albicans</u>, that usually occurs in the skin and mucous membranes of the mouth, respiratory tract, or vagina but may invade the bloodstream, especially in *immunocompromised* individuals.

See also *thrush*.

[11]

capping

Active process whereby cross-linking of cell surface molecules (e.g., by *antibody*) leads to aggregation and subsequent migration of the molecules to one pole of the cell. [3]

carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)

Membrane glycoprotein *epitope* normally present in the fetal gastrointestinal tract and elevated in many patients with various carcinomas.

After [7]

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

cardiolipin

1,3-Bis(*sn*-3-phosphatidyl)-*sn*-glycerol, the main target of antiphospholipid *antibodies*. See also *antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)*.

carrier (in immunology)

Any molecule that, when conjugated to a non-*immunogenic* molecule (e.g., a *hapten*), makes the latter immunogenic by providing *epitopes* for *helper T lymphocytes (Th)* that the hapten lacks. [3]

caspase

Any member of a family of intracellular cysteine proteinases that cleave proteins at specific aspartic acid residues to initiate or promote *apoptosis*.

caveola

Invagination on the cell surface (plasma membrane), enriched in caveolin proteins, cholesterol, and glycosphingolipids, important in various processes including *pinocytosis* and *signal transduction*. A type of *lipid raft*.

celiac disease

gluten enteropathy

non-tropical sprue

Autoimmune disorder occuring in genetically predisposed individuals, characterized by *immune intolerance* to the α -gliadin component of gluten, a protein found in wheat, barley, and rye. Resultant *inflammation* of the *mucosa* of the upper small intestine is associated with malabsorption of nutrients and a wasting illness follows from this.

cell-mediated cytotoxicity

Lysis of a *target cell* initiated by a *T lymphocyte* binding to surface *antibodies* or *antigen*-bound *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules*.

cell-mediated immune response

Specific *immune response* in which *T lymphocytes* mediate the effects, either through the release of *cytokines* or through *cytotoxicity*.

[4]

cell-mediated immunity (CMI)

Immune response mediated by *antigen*-specific *T lymphocytes*, either through the release of *cytokines* or through *cytotoxicity*, in contrast with *humoral immunity*, which is *antibody*-mediated.

Note: Cell-mediated immunity may be expressed as immune regulatory activity (primarily mediated by *CD4+ helper T lymphocytes (Th)*, possibly important in preventing *auto-immune diseases*) or immune effector activity (mediated largely by *CD8+ cytotoxic T cells*).

See also *immune regulation*.

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

1142

cell-mediated response

See cell-mediated immune response.

cellular immunity

See cell-mediated immunity (CMI).

central tolerance

Specific immunological *tolerance* due to the induction of *lymphocyte apoptosis* or *anergy* within the primary *lymphoid* organs (*bone marrow* in the case of *B cell* tolerance and the *thymus* for *T cells*). [3]

challenge (in immunology)

Induction or evaluation of an *immune response* in an organism by administration of a specific *antigen* to which it has been sensitized.

chaperone-mediated autophagy (CMA)

Type of *autophagy* targeting only those proteins that are recognized by the binding of an hsc70-containing chaperone/co-chaperone complex.

chemokine

Any of a large family of small proteins, produced by many types of cells, that attract and guide *lymphocytes* to sites of infection and *inflammation* or to other sites, such as those associated with lymphocyte development and with migration into *lymph nodes*.

- *Note 1*: Chemokines fall into two main categories: CC chemokines (β -chemokines) have two cysteine (C) residues near the amino terminus of the protein, whereas in CXC chemokines (α -chemokines) the two cysteines are separated by a single variable amino acid (X). There are two other groups of chemokines: C chemokines (γ -chemokines) that have two cysteines, one N-terminal cysteine and one cysteine downstream; and CX₃C chemokines (or δ -chemokines) that have three amino acids between the two cysteines.
- *Note 2*: Chemokines act in conjunction with other factors, such as *tumor necrosis factor* $(TNF-\alpha)$, to induce the *adhesion* factors that attach lymphocytes to the blood vessel wall before they move through it into the tissues.

chemotactic factor

Biologically active substance, such as a *chemokine* or *anaphylatoxin*, that induces a concentration gradient-dependent movement of cells.

See also chemotaxis.

chemotaxis

- 1. General. Movement of an organism or cell along a concentration gradient of a chemical.
- 2. In immunology. Movement of cells up a concentration gradient of a chemical attractant (*chemo-tactic factor*), such as a *chemokine* or other *cytokine*.

[3]

chemotype

chemovar

Character of a plant or microorganism based on a metabolite distinct from that found in other members of the same species.

chimeric

Composite of genetically distinct individuals, e.g., following an *allogeneic bone marrow graft*. [3]

chloracne

Acne-like eruption caused by exposure to certain chlorinated organic substances such as polychlorinated biphenyls or 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo[1,4]dioxin [2,3,7,8-tetrachlorooxanthrene] and other polychlorinated dibenzodioxins and furans.

[5]

Note: The lesions are most frequently found on the cheeks, behind the ears, in the armpits and groin region.

chromate uptake assay

Method used in *immunotoxicology* to quantify the toxic effect of a substance on *leukocytes* by measuring uptake of ⁵¹Cr-labeled chromate.

chromium release assay

⁵¹Cr release assay

Immunotoxicity assay that can be used to assess either *natural killer (NK) cell* or *cytotoxic T cell* activity or *macrophage* activity. When incubated with ⁵¹Cr-labeled chicken red blood cells (cRBCs), NK and cytotoxic T cells lyse the cRBC and thus induce the release of ⁵¹Cr into the medium. In contrast, macrophages phagocytose cRBC, and are then lysed to assess the amount of ⁵¹Cr they have taken up.

Note: The assay is usually applied to measure parameters of innate immunity. See also *chromate uptake assay*.

chronic allergic inflammation

Disease of airways, skin, eyes and other organs, resulting from repeated or continuous exposure to an *allergen* and involving *immunoglobulin E (IgE)* formation, IgE-induced *histamine*-release from *mast cells*, liberation of mediators such as *cytokines* and *prostaglandins*, and local *inflammation* characterized by infiltrating *leucocytes*; it results in augmented susceptibility to the allergen.

chronic graft rejection

See chronic rejection.

chronic granulomatous disease

Immunodeficiency disease in which multiple *granulomas* form as a result of defective elimination of bacteria by *phagocytes*.

Note: It is caused by deficiency of the *NADPH oxidase* system of enzymes that generates superoxide involved in bacterial killing.

After [2]

chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)

B cell tumor found in the blood.

Note: The great majority of these tumors express *CD5* and unmutated *variable* (*V*) *genes* and are therefore thought to arise from *B-1 cells*.

After [2]

chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis

See Hashimoto thyroiditis.

chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)

Cancer characterized by overgrowth of the *bone marrow* with malignant white blood cells, usually exhibiting a chromosomal abnormality (Philadelphia chromosome), which causes uncontrolled proliferation of cells that are released into peripheral blood.

chronic rejection

Immunologically triggered reaction occurring in a transplanted organ or tissue, leading to progressive destruction and finally failure of the transplanted organ occurring two months to many years after *transplantation*.

Note: In contrast, hyperacute rejection caused by preformed *antibodies* starts within minutes after organ transplantation, and acute rejection occurs within 2 to 60 days.

class I MHC gene product

See major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecule.

class II MHC gene product

See major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecule.

class switching

Process by which a *B cell* changes the class but not specificity of a given *antibody* it produces, e.g., switching from an *immunoglobulin* M(IgM) to an *immunoglobulin* G(IgG) antibody. [3]

classical pathway (of complement activation)

Activation pathway involving *complement* components C1, C2, and C4 which, following fixation of C1q, e.g., by *antigen-antibody* complexes, produces the *classical pathway* C3 convertase C4b2a. [3]

See also alternative pathway (of complement activation).

clonal anergy

Form of *self-tolerance* developing as a consequence of negative selection during *thymic* selection processes. *Clones* of *thymocytes* whose antigen receptors [*T-cell receptors* (*TCRs*)] bind with high *affinity* to *self-antigens* in association with *major histocompatibility complex* (*MHC*) *molecules* are inactivated.

[4]

clonal deletion

Process by which contact with *antigen* (e.g., self-antigen) at an early stage of *lymphocyte* differentiation leads to cell death by *apoptosis*.

[3]

clonal expansion

Proliferation of *B lymphocytes* and *T lymphocytes* activated by *clonal selection* in order to produce a *clone* of identical cells.

Note: Clonal expansion enables the body to have sufficient numbers of *antigen*-specific *lymphocytes* to mount an effective *immune response*.

clonal indifference

clonal ignorance

Failure of *B* or *T cells* expressing anti-self-*receptors* to interact with *antigen* (e.g., by low valency, low concentration, or sequestration of antigens; low receptor *avidity*; or lack of co-stimulatory molecules).

Note: This is the primary mechanism involved in the induction and maintenance of *self-toler*-*ance*.

After [1]

clonal selection

Selection and *activation* by *antigen* of a *lymphocyte*, bearing a complementary *receptor*, which then proliferates to form an expanded *clone*.

[3]

clone

- 1. (n) Population of genetically identical cells or organisms having a common ancestor.
- 2. (vb) To produce such a population.
- 3. (n) Recombinant DNA molecules all carrying the same inserted sequence.

[5]

cluster determinant (CD)

Cluster of *antigens* representating a cell surface marker with which *antibodies* react. Not to be confused with *cluster of differentiation* (CD) *antigen*.

cluster of differentiation (CD) antigen

Any of a family of molecular markers on cell surfaces that may be used operationally to define phenotype, origin, and *activation* state of the cell.

Note: The CD antigens expressed by a *T cell* vary with its stage of development and thus with its role in the *immune response*.

After [1]

coagulation system

Proteolytic cascade of *plasma* enzymes that triggers blood clotting when blood vessels are damaged. After [2]

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

cognate T cell

Helper T lymphocyte (Th) primed by the same *antigen* as the *B cell* to which it gives help. After [2]

cold autoantibody type

Autoantibody that reacts optimally at low temperatures (0-5 °C) with surface antigens of erythrocytes.

Note: It mediates *autoimmune hemolytic anemia* by either *cold agglutinins* (cold hemagglutinin disease) or cold hemolysins (paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria).

After [1]

collagen arthritis

Autoimmune model of *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, arising from combined *cellular immunity* and *humoral immunity* against collagen type II, and characterized by rapid and severe erosions of cartilage and bone. After [12]

collectin

Any member of a structurally related family of calcium-dependent carbohydrate-binding proteins or *lectins* containing collagen-like sequences, e.g., *mannose-binding lectin (MBL)*. After [2] See also *C-type lectin*.

colony-stimulating factor (CSF)

Factor that permits the proliferation and differentiation of *hematopoietic* cells. [3]

combinatorial diversity

Component of *antibody* and *T-cell receptor (TCR)* diversity that is generated by the recombination of *variable (V), diversity (D,* for *immunoglobulin heavy chains*, and for TCR β and δ chains), and *joining (J) gene* segments.

See also V(D)J recombination.

combinatorial joining

Merging of DNA segments generating new genetic information.

combined immunodeficiency

See X-linked severe combined immune deficiency.

common variable immunodeficiency

Relatively common deficiency in *antibody* production, of unknown pathogenesis but strongly associated with genes mapping within the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*. Modified from [2]

Note 1: Characterized by reduced γ *globulin* levels, generally affecting all the *antibody* classes, but sometimes only *immunoglobulin* G (*IgG*).

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

1146

Note 2: Most patients have normal or near-normal numbers of *B cells*, which however do not differentiate into *plasma cells*.

competitive inhibition assay

Method of measuring an *antigen* in a sample using a labeled species of the antigen as a competitive inhibitor of its binding in a specific *antigen–antibody reaction*.

complement

Group of approximately 20 *serum* proteinase precursors, some of which act in an enzymatic cascade, producing effector molecules involved in *inflammation* (proteins C3a, C5a), *phagocytosis* (*opsoniza-tion*) (C3b), and cell lysis (C5b, C6–C9).

After [3]

See also complement system.

complementarity-determining region (CDR)

Hypervariable amino acid sequence within *antibody* and *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable (V) regions*, which interacts with complementary amino acids on the antigen or *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*—peptide complex.

After [3]

complement deficiency

Congenital deficiency in any of the various components of the *complement system*.

Note: Rheumatic disorders [mainly *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*] are associated with deficiencies of the early components of the *classical pathway*. More than 30 % of individuals with C2 deficiency and nearly 80 % with either C3 or C4 deficiency have an *autoimmune* manifestation.

complement reaction

Physiological reaction to the presence of a foreign microorganism in which a cascade of enzymatic reactions, triggered by molecular features of the microorganism, result in lysis or *phagocytosis* of the foreign material.

complement receptor (CR)

Cell-surface protein that recognizes and binds complement proteins that have bound an antigen.

Note: Complement receptors on *phagocytes* allow them to identify pathogens coated with complement proteins for uptake and destruction. Complement receptors include CR1, CR2, CR3, CR4, and the receptor for Clq.

After [2]

complement system

Group of *serum* proteins with the capacity to interact with each other when activated in a chain reaction which results in formation of a lytic complex and the release of several biologically active peptides of low relative molecular mass (*anaphylatoxins*).

Note: The system can be activated by *antigen-antibody* complexes (*classical pathway*) and by other components, e.g., bacteria (*alternative pathway*). As an effector mechanism of the

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

humoral immune response, the activated complement system facilitates opsonization, phagocytosis, and lysis of cellular antigens.

After [4]

concanavalin A (conA)

Hemagglutinin, isolated from jack bean (<u>Canavalia ensiformis</u>) meal, which reacts with polyglucosans in the blood of mammals, causing *agglutination*.

Note: Concanavalin A has been used to activate *T cells* in vitro.

conformational epitope

Epitope on a protein *antigen* formed from several separate regions in the primary sequence of a protein brought together by protein folding.

[2]

congenic

Differing at a single genetic locus.

conjugate (in biochemistry)

- 1. Chemical species produced in living organisms by covalently linking two chemical moieties from different sources, for example, a conjugate of a *xenobiotic* with some group such as glutathione, sulfate, or glucuronic acid, to make it soluble in water or compartmentalized within the cell.
- 2. Material produced by attaching two or more substances together, for example, a conjugate of an *antibody* with a fluorochrome, or an enzyme.

[5]

conjunctivitis, allergic

Irritation of the ocular conjunctiva, resulting from the activation of conjunctival *mast cells* by airborne *allergens* such as pollens or house dust.

constant (C) domain

See constant (C) region.

constant (C) gene

Gene that encodes the *constant* (C) region of *immunoglobulin* (Ig) chains or T-cell receptor (TCR) chains.

constant (C) region

Part of an *immunoglobulin (Ig)* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* that is relatively constant in amino acid sequence among different Ig or TCR molecules.

Note: In an *antibody* molecule the constant regions of each chain are composed of up to four C domains. The constant region of an antibody determines its general type of interaction.

After [2] See also *variable* (V) *region*.
contact allergen

Substance that causes a skin hypersensitivity reaction by direct contact.

contact dermatitis

Skin *inflammation* that occurs when the skin's surface comes in contact with a substance originating outside the body.

Note: There are two kinds of contact dermatitis, irritant and *allergic*.

contact hypersensitivity

Immune response following skin contact with an antigen.

contact sensitivity

State of immunological *sensitization* in which an *eczematous* epidermal reaction may occur when a *hapten* is applied to the skin of a sensitized individual.
[4]
See also *contact dermatitis*.

contact urticaria

Urticaria provoked by contact with inducing agents. [4]

continuous epitope

See linear epitope.

conventional dendritic cell

Predominant type of *dendritic cell* active in *antigen* presentation to and *activation* of *naïve T cells*.

convergent evolution

Independent evolution of similarity between molecules or between species. [3]

convertase

Enzyme activity that converts complement protein into its reactive form by cleaving it.

Note: Generation of the *C3/C5 convertase* is the pivotal event in complement activation. [7]

Coombs and Gell classification

See Gell and Coombs classification.

Coombs test

Diagnostic test using anti-*immunoglobulin (Ig)* to agglutinate *antibody*-coated *erythrocytes*. [3]

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Note: The direct Coombs test, or direct antiglobulin test (DAT) refers to *agglutination* of a blood sample due to antibodies present on the erythrocyte surface. In the indirect Coombs test, or indirect antiglobulin test (IAT) antibodies free in the subject's *serum* are tested for their availability to agglutinate erythrocytes of known *antigenicity*.

coreceptor

Cell surface protein *receptor* that recognizes a substance bound to a primary receptor, and binds to a signaling molecule that thereby enhances the activity of another receptor.

- *Note 1*: Optimal *T cell activation* in an *immune response* depends on the involvement of relevant coreceptors occurring in a cluster with the *T-cell receptors* (*TCRs*). The coreceptors are *CD4* or *CD8* proteins, which lie alongside the T-cell receptor in the plasma membrane. Only when both coreceptor and receptor bind the *major histocompatibility complex* (*MHC*) *molecule*-antigen complex simultaneously is the full set of intracellular effector molecules recruited and the signal pathway inside the cell maximally activated.
- *Note 2: B-cell receptors (BCRs)* require the contributions of several coreceptors, notably CD19, CD21, and CD81 proteins, for full activation of intracellular signaling pathways.

corticosteroid

Any of the family of steroid molecules that are produced in the adrenal cortex, or their synthetic analogs.

Note: Corticosteroids can induce *apoptotic* cell death in *lymphocytes*, especially developing *thymocytes*. Therefore, they are useful anti-inflammatory, anti-*lymphoid* tumor, and *immunosuppressive* agents.

After [2]

co-stimulation

Delivery of a second signal, in addition to that of *antigen* binding or *antigen* presentation, that is required for *lymphocyte* proliferation.

- *Note 1*: Co-stimulatory signals are delivered to *T cells* by the co-stimulatory molecules, B7.1 and B7.2, related molecules (see *B7 molecule*) that are expressed on the surface of the *antigen-presenting cell (APC)*, and which bind the T-cell surface molecule CD28.
- *Note 2: B cells* may receive co-stimulatory signals from common pathogen components such as *lipopolysaccharide (LPS)*, from *complement* fragments, or from *CD40 ligand* (CD40L) expressed on the surface of an activated antigen-specific *helper T lymphocyte (Th)*.

counter-regulation hypothesis

Hypothesis that all types of infection early in childhood may protect against the development of *atopy* by driving the production of *cytokines* such as *interleukin*-10 (IL-10) and *transforming growth factor*- β (*TGF*- β), which downregulate both *Th1* and *Th2* responses. [2]

Crohn disease

Chronic *inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)* thought to result from an abnormal overresponsiveness to commensal gut flora.

[2]

cross-matching

- 1. Test for determining the compatibility between the blood of a donor and that of a recipient before *transfusion*; the clumping of *erythrocytes* indicates incompatibility.
- 2. Test for determining tissue compatibility between a transplant donor and the recipient before *transplantation*, in which the recipient's *serum* is tested for *antibodies* that may react with the *lymphocytes* or other cells of the donor.
- 3. Process of performing one of these tests.

cross-presentation

cross-priming

Activation of CD8+ lymphocytes by the presentation of exogenous antigens in association with major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules.

- *Note 1*: This is in contrast to normal activation of these lymphocytes (direct-*priming*) that results from presentation of endogenous antigens.
- *Note 2*: The cells that cross-present antigens are the bone marrow-derived *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)*. The form of antigen they monitor from tissues is predominantly cellular protein, acquired though *phagocytosis* and *macropinocytosis* and presented through two distinct pathways. In one pathway, antigen is transferred into the cytosol where it is degraded by *proteasomes*, and in the other, the antigen is hydrolyzed in the endocytic compartment

Note 3: Cross-presentation can lead to different outcomes, *tolerance* or *immunity*.

[13]

cross-priming

See cross-presentation.

cross-reacting antibody

Antibody that is able to react with an antigen that did not specifically stimulate its production.

Note: Cross-reactions are usually weaker than the reaction of the antibody with the antigen that caused its production.

cross-reacting antigen

- 1. *Antigen* that is able to react with an *antibody* induced by a different antigen.
 - *Note:* The two antigens may share the same *antigenic determinants* or carry determinants that are sufficiently alike stereochemically to enable the antibody to react with both.
- 2. Antigen that has an identical structure in two strains of microorganism, so that antibody raised against one strain will react with the other strain.

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

cross-reactivity

- 1. Ability of an *antibody* or a *T cell*, specific for one *antigen*, to react with a second antigen.
- 2. Measure of relatedness between two *antigenic* substances, and (or) the polyspecificity of the antibody molecule (e.g., some *rheumatoid factors*), or of the *T-cell receptor (TCR)*.
- [4]

cross sensitivity

State of immunological *hypersensitivity* to one substance that predisposes an individual to sensitivity to other substances that are related in chemical structure (*cross-reacting antigens*).

cross-tolerance (in immunology)

State of immunological *tolerance* to one substance produced by *priming* an animal with another substance that bears a *cross-reacting antigen*.

cryoglobulin

Immunoglobulin (Ig) that forms insoluble aggregates at temperatures below body temperature.

Note: Many cryoglobulins function as *autoantibodies* (e.g., *rheumatoid factor*). Cryoglobulins are found in lymphoproliferative (see *lymphoproliferation*) diseases, a number of *autoimmune diseases*, as well as chronic infections. They can cause vasculitic and secondary thrombotic manifestations (*cryoglobulinemic vasculitis, glomerulonephritis*).

After [1]

cryoglobulinemic vasculitis

Cutaneous or *systemic vasculitis* caused by cold-labile proteins (*cryoglobulins*, cryofibrinogen) that leads to increased viscosity, protein precipitation or gelatinification, *complement* activation, and endothelial cell damage, especially in the cold.

Note: Frequently associated with chronic hepatitis C or B infection, but can also be induced by other infections and malignancies.

After [1]

cryopyrin

See NACHT domain-, leucine-rich repeat-, and PYD-containing protein 3.

cryptic epitope

Epitope that cannot be recognized by a *lymphocyte receptor* until the *antigen* has been broken down and processed or modified by *hapten* binding. After [2]

cutaneous lymphocyte antigen (CLA)

Cell-surface molecule that is involved in *lymphocyte homing* to the skin in humans. [2]

cutaneous T-cell lymphoma

mycosis fungoides

© 2012, IUPAC

Malignant growth of *T cells* that home (see *homing*) to the skin. [2]

cytokine

Any of a group of soluble small proteins released from a variety of cells, typically of the *immune system*, that affect cell behavior in an *autocrine* or *paracrine* fashion.

Note: Cytokines produced by *lymphocytes* are known as *lymphokines*; those produced by *monocytes* are called *monokines*. Other types of cytokines include *chemokines*, growth factors, colony-stimulating factors (CSFs), transforming growth factors, interferons, interleukins, and tumor necrosis factors.

cytokine capture assay

in vivo cytokine capture assay (IVCCA)

Method to detect *cytokine* release by injecting an animal with a neutralizing biotinylated *antibody* to the cytokine, which inhibits its utilization and allows its accumulation in the blood. Recovered cytokineantibody complexes are then measured in an *enzyme-linked immonusorbent assay (ELISA)* with an antibody to a second epitope on the cytokine.

cytokine profile

Characteristic pattern of *cytokine* production associated with a defined immunological state.

cytokine release assay (CRA)

Method of quantifying cytokines released by viable cells, using cytokine-specific antibodies.

cytolysis, immune

- 1. Cell lysis caused by a lesion produced by the action of *complement* proteins on the *antibody*-coated plasma membrane of a cell.
- 2. Cell lysis following plasma membrane reaction with *perforins* released by *natural killer (NK) cells*.

cytolytic T cell

See cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL, Tc).

cytomegalovirus (CMV)

visceral disease virus

Any of a group of highly *host*-specific slow growing herpes viruses that infect humans, monkeys, pigs, or rodents, with the production of unique enlarged epithelial cells with intranuclear inclusions and often with a special affinity for the salivary glands.

- *Note 1*: The virus specific for humans causes cytomegalic inclusion disease, and it has been associated with a syndrome resembling infectious mononucleosis.
- *Note 2*: CMV is of most risk to unborn children of women who get CMV for the first time during pregnancy.

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

cytopenia

Decrease in the number of one or more types of blood cells. See also *pancytopenia*.

cytotoxic

Causing damage to cell structure or function. [5]

cytotoxic T cell

See cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL, Tc).

cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL, Tc)

CD8+ T cell cytolytic T cell cytotoxic T cell killer T cell

Any of a subset of *T lymphocytes* bearing the *CD8* surface marker and able to kill *target cells* [infected somatic or tumor cells, recognized by the *antigen receptor* complex (*TCR/CD3*)] after induction of a specific *immune response* to the *antigens* bound to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules*.

Note: CD4+ T cells may also become cytotoxic.

cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen 4 (CTLA-4)

CD152

High *affinity* receptor for *B7 molecules* expressed on *T cells*, binding of which inhibits T cell *activation*.

[7]

Note: Mutations in the gene encoding CTLA-4 have been associated with various *autoimmune diseases*.

cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) assay

Assay based on quantitation of cell death caused by sensitized (see *sensitization*) *lymphocytes* or splenocytes cultured with a fixed number of tumor or other *target cells* that have been prelabeled with 51 Cr. The 51 Cr is taken up and reversibly binds to cytosolic proteins. When these target cells are incubated with sensitized lymphocytes, the target cells are killed and the 51 Cr is released.

cytotoxin

Substance with a specific toxic effect on certain cells.

Note: Major cytotoxins made by *cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTL, Tc)* and *natural killer (NK) cells* that participate in the destruction of *target cells* include *perforins, granzymes*, and granulolysins.

D gene See *diversity* (*D*) gene.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

DEC-205 CD205 Surface *antigen* characteristic of *dendritic cells*.

DNA vaccination

DNA immunization Injection of DNA into muscle, followed by its transcription and translation into a protein or proteins that elicit *antibody* and *T-cell* responses. See also *immunization*, *vaccination*.

DP, DQ, and DR molecules

Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules occurring on human B lymphocytes and antigen-presenting cells (APCs).

danger hypothesis

Hypothesis that suggests it is not foreignness of a molecule per se but rather its ability to cause cell damage or stress that induces an *immune response*. Often implicated in causation of *idiosyncratic drug reac-tions*.

death receptor

death ligand receptor

Cell-surface *receptor* whose binding to extracellular *ligands* stimulates *apoptosis* in the receptor-bearing cell through the *extrinsic pathway*. See also *tumor necrosis factor (TNF)*.

death domain

Protein-interaction domain originally discovered in proteins involved in programmed cell death or *apoptosis*.

decay-accelerating factor (DAF)

CD55

Cell-surface molecule that protects cells from lysis by complement.

Note: The decay-accelerating factor binds to C3 *convertases* of both the *alternative pathway* and *classical pathway of complement activation* and, by displacing Bb and C2b respectively, prevents their action. Its absence causes the disease paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.

[2]

defensin

Any member of a family of oligopeptides made within the body, notably by *neutrophils* and *macrophages*, and having potent antimicrobial properties.

Note 1: Defensins play important roles against invading microbes. They act against bacteria, fungi, and viruses by binding to their membranes and increasing membrane permeability.

Note 2: Human defensins are classified into the α -defensins and β -defensins on the basis of their sequence homology and their cysteine residues.

After [1]

degranulation

Cell reaction that releases antimicrobial *cytotoxic* molecules and other substances (e.g., *histamine*) from secretory vesicles called granules found inside some cells.

Note: Degranulation occurs in several different cells involved in the immune system, including granulocytes (neutrophils, basophils, and eosinophils), mast cells, and certain lymphocytes such as natural killer (NK) cells and cytotoxic T cells.

delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH)

Gell and Coombs Type IV reaction

Form of *T cell*-mediated *immunity* in which the ultimate effector cell is the activated mononuclear *phagocyte* (*macrophage*); the response of DTH appears fully over 24 to 48 h. Previous exposure is required.

Note: Examples include response to <u>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</u> (*tuberculin test*) and *contact dermatitis*.

[4]

delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) assay

In vivo assay of *cell-mediated immune response*, elicited by *antigen* in the skin and mediated by *CD4+ Th1 cells*.

Note: DTH reactions are often divided into two phases which should be assessed in the assay: the *sensitization* phase, referring to the initial *immunization* with specific antigen, and the efferent or *challenge* phase of the DTH response, which usually follows 6 to 14 days after sensitization.

dendritic cell

interdigitating dendritic cell

interdigitating reticular cell

Ameboid cell that is *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II*-positive, *Fc receptor*-negative, and presents processed *antigens* to *T cells* in the T-cell areas of *secondary lymphoid* tissues.

- *Note 1*: Dendritic cells are potent stimulators of T-cell responses. Nonlymphoid tissues also contain dendritic cells, but these are not able to stimulate T-cell responses until they are activated.
- *Note 2*: There are three major sublasses of dendritic cells, *conventional dendritic cells*, *Langerhans cells*, and *plasmacytoid dendritic cells*.
- *Note 3*: This is a different cell type from the *follicular dendritic cell*, which is *Fc receptor*-positive.
- *Note 4*: Some authors also distinguish myeloid and lymphoid dendritic cells based on lineage. [14]
- *Note 5:* Some confusion in the classification of dendritic cells may arise from systems based on function, morphology, or lineage, and possibly species differences.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

After [2,3]

deposition, immune complex

Precipitation of *immune complex* in organs and tissues, often causing local *inflammation*.

Note: Immune complex deposition is a prominent feature of systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), cryoglobulinemia, rheumatoid arthritis (RA), scleroderma, and Sjögren syndrome.

dermatitis

Inflammation of the skin showing redness, swelling, infiltration, scaling, and sometimes vesicles and blisters: *contact dermatitis* is due to local exposure and may be caused by irritation, *allergy*, or *photo-contact dermatitis*.

Modified from [4]

dermatomyositis

Disease characterized by the presence of *inflammation* of the skin and muscles.

Note: Its cause is unknown, but it may be associated with a viral infection or some *auto-immune reaction* and may present also as paraneoplastic phenomena (see *paraneoplastic autoimmune syndrome*).

desensitization

Generally transient state of specific non-reactivity in a previously sensitized individual, resulting from repeated *antigen* exposures.

[4] See also *sensitization*.

determinant

See antigenic determinant.

diabetes mellitus, insulin-dependent

See diabetes mellitus type 1.

diabetes mellitus type 1

Disease in which the β cells of the pancreatic islets of Langerhans are destroyed with the result that no insulin is produced.

Note: The disease is believed to result from an *autoimmune* attack on the β cells. It is also known as insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM), as the symptoms can be ameliorated by injections of insulin.

[2]

diapedesis

Movement of blood cells, particularly *leukocytes*, from the blood across blood vessel walls into tissues. [2]

differential (in hematology)

Reported blood count that distinguishes the percentages of the different blood cells present.

differential splicing

Utilization and splicing of different exons from a primary RNA transcript in order to generate different mRNA sequences.

[3]

differentiation antigen

Cell surface molecule expressed at a particular stage of development or on cells of a given lineage. [3]

DiGeorge syndrome

Immunodeficiency caused by a congenital failure in *thymic* development resulting in a lack of mature functional *T cells*. [3]

direct antiglobulin test (DAT) See *Coombs test*.

direct Coombs test

See Coombs test.

discontinuous epitope

See conformational epitope.

disintegrin and metalloproteinase domain-containing protein 33 (ADAM33)

Member of the ADAM (A Disintegrin And Metalloproteinase domain) family of transmembrane proteins, possibly related to *asthma* susceptibility.

diversity (D) gene

Small segment of *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) *heavy-chain* or *T-cell receptor DNA* between the *variable* (*V*) *gene* and *joining* (*J*) *gene* segments, coding for the third hypervariable region of the receptors. See also V(D)J recombination.

domain (in molecular biology)
Structural element of a polypeptide.
[3]

dot plot

Two-dimensional graphical representation of individual data points.

Note: Often used to visualize the fluorescence and light scattering intensities acquired during *flow cytometry*.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

double diffusion

See Ouchterlony technique.

double-negative cell

Immature T cell in the thymus that lacks expression of the two coreceptors, CD4 and CD8.

Note: In a normal *thymus*, double-negative cells represent about 5 % of *thymocytes*.

[2]

double-positive cell

Immature T cell in the *thymus* that is characterized by expression of both *CD4* and *CD8 coreceptor* proteins.

Note: In a normal *thymus*, double-positive cells represent the majority (80 %) of *thymocytes*. [2] See also *pre-T cell*.

draining lymph node

Lymph node that is downstream of a site of infection and thus receives *antigens* and microbes from the site via the *lymphatic* system.

Note: Draining lymph nodes often enlarge enormously during an *immune response* and can be palpated; they were originally called swollen glands.

[2]

Draize test

1. ocular

Test for potential to cause irritation to the eye in which the test substance is applied directly to the eye of restrained rabbits.

- *Note:* Widely criticized as unethical. Now often replaced with an acute eye irritation test using cadaveric chicken eyes.
- 2. skin

Test for the potential of a material to cause irritation or corrosion following local dermal application. Generally performed with rabbits.

[5]

drug-induced autoimmunity

Immune-mediated idiosyncratic drug reaction against self-antigens.

drug-induced lupus

Idiosyncratic drug reaction similar in character to *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)* and having *anti-nuclear antibodies (ANA)*, but generally milder in nature and resolving when drug exposure is discontinued.

dyscrasia See blood dyscrasia.

1160

eczema

Acute or chronic skin *inflammation* with erythema, papules, vesicles, pustules, scales, crusts, or scabs, alone or in combination, of varied etiology.

[5]

edema

Presence of abnormally large amounts of fluid in intercellular spaces of body tissues. [5]

effector cell

Cell that carries out an immune function, e.g., *cytokine* release, *cytotoxic*ity. [3]

elicitation

Production of a cell-mediated or *antibody*-mediated *allergic* response by exposure of a sensitized individual to an *allergen*.

[4]

See also *cell-mediated immune response*.

embryonic stem (ES) cell

Embryonic cell that will grow continuously in culture and that retains the ability to contribute to all cell lineages.

- *Note 1*: ES cells can be genetically manipulated in tissue culture and then inserted into mouse blastocysts to generate mutant lines of mice; often genes are deleted in ES cells by homologous recombination and the mutant ES cells are then used to generate gene *knockout mice*.
- *Note 2*: ES cells may also be used to *clone* organisms.

endocytosis

Cellular ingestion of macromolecules by invagination of plasma membrane to produce an intracellular vesicle that encloses the ingested material. [3]

endogenous

Antonym: exogenous Produced within or caused by factors within an organism. [5]

endosome

Intracellular smooth surfaced vesicle in which endocytosed (see *endocytosis*) material passes on its way to the *lysosomes*.

[3]

endotoxin

Pathogenic cell wall-associated lipopolysaccharides of Gram-negative bacteria. [3]

enhancement (in immunology)

See immune enhancement.

enhancing antibody

Antibody that binds to an antibody-antigen complex or idiotypic-anti-idiotypic antibody complex and strengthens the interaction.

enterotoxin

Toxin affecting intestinal cells and thus causing food poisoning.

Note: Enterotoxins stimulate many types of *T cells* by binding to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules* and the Vb domain [see *variable (V) domain*] of certain *T-cell receptors (TCRs)*. Enterotoxins have thus been referred to as *superantigens*.

enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)

Procedure for detection or quantitation of an *antibody* or *antigen* using a *ligand* (e.g., an anti*immunoglobulin*) conjugated to an enzyme that changes the color of a substrate.

[3]

- *Note 1*: With a fixed amount of immobilized antigen, the amount of labeled antibody bound decreases as the concentration of unlabeled antigen is increased, allowing quantification of unlabeled antigen (competitive ELISA).
- *Note 2*: With a fixed amount of one immobilized antibody, the binding of a second, labeled antibody increases as the concentration of antigen increases, allowing quantification of antigen (sandwich ELISA).

After [1]

See also enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) assay, immunosorbent.

enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) assay

Adaptation of *enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)* in which cells are placed over *antibodies* or *antigens* attached to a plastic surface. The antigen or antibody traps the cells' secreted products, which can then be detected using an enzyme-coupled antibody that cleaves a colorless substrate to make a localized colored spot. This allows quantitation of the number of cells producing a given product such as a *cytokine*.

eosinophil

Circulating granular *leukocyte* (*granulocyte*) having prominent granules that stain specifically by eosin and containing numerous *lysosomes*.

- *Note 1*: Eosinophils are important effector cells in immune reactions to *antigens* that induce high levels of *immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibodies* (e.g., parasites).
- *Note 2:* Eosinophils are also abundant at sites of *immediate-type hypersensitivity* reactions.

[4]

eosinophil chemotactic factor of anaphylaxis (ECF-A)

Cytokine that facilitates anaphylaxis and attracts eosinophils during substrate release by mast cells.

eotaxin

CCL11

CC chemokine that acts predominantly on *eosinophils*. [2]

epitope

Part of a molecule recognized by *antigen receptors* on *T cells* or *B cells* (T-cell epitopes or B-cell epitopes).

Note: A macromolecule can contain many different epitopes, each capable of stimulating production of a different specific *antibody*.

See also antigenic determinant.

epitope retrieval

antigen retrieval

Treatment of denatured *antigen* with heat or other agents in order to regenerate (unmask) lost *antibody*binding capacity.

epitope spreading

Increase in the number of *epitopes* targeted by *autoantibodies* and/or *T cells*. The epitopes may be on the same *autoantigen* (intramolecular epitope spreading) and/or on other autoantigens (intermolecular epitope spreading).

Note: This is a characteristic sign of progression of *autoimmune disease* from initial activation to a chronic state.

[1]

Epstein–Barr virus (EBV)

Virus responsible for infectious mononucleosis and Burkitt's lymphoma. This virus is used to immortalize human *B lymphocytes* in vitro. [3]

equivalence (in immunology)

Ratio of *antibody* to *antigen* at which *immunoprecipitation* of the reactants is virtually complete. [3]

equivalence zone

Range of concentrations of *antigen* and *antibody* in which neither is in significant excess in a *precipitin* reaction.

erythema

Redness of the skin produced by congestion of the capillaries. [5]

© 2012, IUPAC

erythroblastosis fetalis

Two potentially disabling or fatal blood disorders in infants: *Rhesus (Rh) factor* incompatibility disease and *ABO blood group* incompatibility disease.

Note: The disorders are caused by incompatibility between a mother's blood and her unborn baby's blood, causing the mother's *immune system* to launch an *immune response* against the baby's *erythrocytes*.

erythrocyte

Red blood cell.

erythropoiesis

Erythrocyte production. [3]

erythropoietin

Glycoprotein hormone that stimulates the production of erythrocytes by stem cells in bone marrow.

Note: It is produced mainly by the kidneys and is released in response to decreased levels of oxygen in body tissue.

euglobulin

Member of a class of proteins insoluble in water but soluble in saline solutions.

exocytosis

Release of the content of an intracellular vesicle to the exterior of the cell.

Note: The vesicles make their way to the plasma membrane, with which they fuse to permit the contents to be released to the external environment.

[7]

exotoxin

Pathogenic protein secreted by bacteria. [3]

experimental allergic encephalomyelitis (EAE)

See encephalomyelitis, experimental allergic.

extravasation

Movement of cells or fluid from within blood vessels to the surrounding tissues. [2]

extrinsic allergic alveolitis

See hypersensitivity pneumonitis (HPS).

extrinsic pathway (of apoptosis)

Apoptotic mechanism triggered by extracellular *ligands* binding to specific cell-surface receptors (*death receptors*), which then signal the cell to undergo programmed cell death.

[2]

See also intrinsic pathway (of apoptosis).

exudate

Extravascular fluid containing proteins and cellular debris that accumulates during *inflammation*. [3]

Fab fragment

Monovalent *antigen*-binding ('ab') fragment obtained following papain digestion of *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*). It consists of an intact *light chain* and the N-terminal VH and C H1 domains of the *heavy chain*. [3]

F(ab')2 fragment

Bivalent *antigen*-binding fragment obtained following pepsin digestion of *immunoglobulin*. Consists of both *light chains* and the N-terminal part of both *heavy chains* linked by disulfide bonds. [3]

Note:

Te: Because it lacks the *Fc fragment* it does not bind the *Fc-receptor*, e.g., in flow cytometry.

Fc fragment

Crystallizable, non-*antigen*-binding fragment of an *immunoglobulin (Ig)* molecule obtained following papain digestion. Consists of the C-terminal portion of both *heavy chains*, responsible for binding to *Fc* receptors and *complement* factor C1q.

[3]

Fc receptor

Receptors expressed on a wide range of cells, interacting with the Fc portion (see *Fc fragment*) of *immunoglobulins (Ig)* belonging to various *isotypes*.

Note: Membrane-bound Fc receptors mediate different effector functions [e.g., *endocytosis*, *antibody-dependent-cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC)*] and induce mediator release. Both the membrane-bound and soluble forms of Fc receptors regulate *antibody* production by *B lymphocytes*.

After [4,15]

Fc region

See Fc fragment.

Fd fragment

Heavy chain portion of an *immunoglobulin (Ig)* N-terminal to the papain hydrolysis site, after reduction and separation of the *light chain* portion. See also *Fab fragment*.

^{. .}

fMLP peptide

Formyl-methionyl-leucyl-phenylalanine, a chemoattractant (see *chemotactic factor*, *chemotaxis*) derived from degradation of bacterial or mitochondrial proteins. It causes *neutrophil activation*.

Foxp3

Transcription repressor that is specifically expressed in CD4+CD25+ T cells.

Note: Mutations in the FOXP3 gene may lead to an *autoimmune* syndrome called IPEX (*immunodysregulation–polyendocrinopathy–enteropathy, X-linked*).

[1]

Fv fragment

Variable (V) region fragment of an *antibody heavy chain* or *light chain*. [3]

familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome (FCAS)

Episodic *autoinflammatory disease*, induced by exposure to cold, and caused by mutations in the gene CSA1, encoding *cryopyrin*. After [2]

familial hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis (FHL)

Progressive and potentially lethal inflammatory disease caused by an inherited deficiency of perforin.

Note: Large numbers of *polyclonal CD8+ T cells* accumulate in *lymphoid tissue* and other organs, and this is associated with activated *macrophages* that phagocytose (see *phagocytosis*) blood cells, including *erythrocytes* and *leukocytes*.

After [2]

farmer's lung

Hypersensitivity disease caused by the interaction of *immunoglobulin G* (IgG) antibodies with large amounts of an inhaled *allergen* in the alveolar wall of the lung, causing alveolar wall *inflammation* and compromising gas exchange.

After [2]

Fas

Cd95

Member of the *tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor* gene family. Engagement of Fas on the surface of the cell by the Fas *ligand* (CD178) present on *cytotoxic* cells can trigger *apoptosis* in the Fas-bearing *target cell*.

[3]

fetal antigens

Human cancer cell *antigens*, which *cross-react* serologically (see *serology*) with antigens normally expressed by embryonic tissue, e.g., *carcinoembryonic antigen* (*CEA*), or α -fetoprotein (AFP). After [16]

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

fetal tolerance

Lack of *rejection* of a fetal *allograft* carrying paternal *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* and *minor histocompatibility antigens* that differ from those of the mother.

fibrinolysis

Enzymatic lysis of a fibrin clot.

fibrinolytic

Pertaining to, characterized by, or causing the breakdown of fibrin (*fibrinolysis*), usually by the action of plasmin.

fibroblast

Connective tissue cell that produces collagen and plays an important part in wound healing. [3]

first line of defence

Surface tissues, notably the skin, respiratory tract, and gastrointestinal tract.

- *Note 1*: These tissues are rich in *immunocompetent* cells that form a first line of defense by recognizing pathogens, destroying them with secretory *antibodies*, or preventing their intrusion into the organism.
- *Note 2*: Internal organs may also have a first line of defense, e.g., the microglia have been considered as a first line of defense against brain infections.

flow cytometry

Method of sorting and measuring types of cells by fluorescent labeling of markers on the surface of the cells. It is sometimes referred to as fluorescence-assisted (or activated) cell sorting (FACS) analysis.

fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)

Green fluorescent dye used to "tag" *antibodies* for use in *immunofluorescence*. [3]

fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS)

Fluorescence-assisted cell sorting. See *flow cytometry*.

fluorescent antibody

Antibody conjugated to a fluorescent dye such as *fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)*. [3]

follicular dendritic cell

Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II-negative *Fc receptor*-positive *dendritic cell* which bears *immune complexes* on its surface and is probably involved in the generation of *antibody*-secreting cells and maintenance of *B-cell* memory (see *memory cell*) in *germinal centers*.

© 2012, IUPAC

Note: This is a different cell type from the *dendritic cell*.

[3]

footpad test

Test for *allergic contact dermatitis* in which the test substance is injected into the front footpad of a guinea pig and *challenge* is performed seven days later.

Forssman antigen

Glycolipid *heterophile antigen* (globopentosylceramide) expressed on cell surfaces during embryonic and adult life in rodents and other mammals, and found in many pathogens, but probably not in humans.

- *Note 1*: Anti-Forssman *antibodies* directed against the terminal sugar moiety are commonly found in plasma and may be involved in *Guillain–Barré syndrome (GBS)*.
- *Note 2*: Anti-Forssman antibodies reportedly disrupt tight junction formation, apical-basal polarization, and cell adhesion.

After [17]

framework region

One of several relatively conserved amino acid sequences that flank the *hypervariable regions* in *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable (V) regions* and maintain a common overall structure for all V region domains.

[3]

Freund's adjuvant

Complete Freund's *adjuvant* is an emulsion of aqueous *antigen* in mineral oil that contains heat-killed Mycobacteria.

Note 1: Incomplete Freund's adjuvant lacks the Mycobacteria.

Note 2: It can cause painful local *inflammation* and should be used with care.

After [3]

γ:δ T cell

Lymphocyte whose *T-cell receptor (TCR)* is a heterodimer of a γ chain and a δ chain. See γ : δ *T-cell receptor*.

γ:δ T-cell receptor

T-cell receptor (TCR) composed of two different glycoprotein chains, designated γ and δ , assembled in a γ : δ heterodimer.

Note: Cells bearing these *receptors* are called $\gamma \cdot \delta T$ cells. The group of $\gamma \cdot \delta T$ cells is much less common than $\alpha \cdot \beta T$ cells, and usually found in the gut *mucosa*, in a population of *lymphocytes* known as *intra-epithelial lymphocytes* (*IELs*).

γ-interferon (IFN-γ)

Member of a group of *cytokines*, the *interferons*, which has as its primary action the activation of *macrophages* and can induce cells to resist viral replication.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Note: γ-interferon is a product of *CD4*+ *Th1* cells, *CD8*+ *T cells*, and *natural killer* (*NK*) *cells*.

G protein

Any member of a family of guanine nucleotide-biding proteins that binds GTP, converts it to GDP, and interacts with so-called G protein-coupled *receptors* in the process of cell *signal transduction*.

Note: There are two kinds of G protein, the heterotrimeric (α, β, γ) receptor-associated G proteins, and the small G proteins, such as Ras and Raf, that act downstream of many transmembrane signaling events.

gp120

Viral glycoprotein, non-covalently associated with gp41 in the viral envelope of *human immuno-deficiency virus (HIV)*.

Note: The gp120 portion of the glycoprotein complex binds with high *affinity* to the cell-surface molecule *CD4*. Before fusion and entry of the virus, gp120 must bind to a *coreceptor* in the membrane of the host cell, for instance *chemokine receptors* (mainly CCR5).

gammaglobulin

One of a group of *serum* proteins, mostly *immunoglobulins (Ig)*, which have the greatest mobility towards the cathode during electrophoresis. After [3]

[0]

gamma-interferon

See γ -interferon (IFN- γ).

ganglioside

Member of a group of glycolipid components of all vertebrate cell membranes that are expressed at high densities in peripheral nervous tissues.

Note: Gangliosides are targets of *autoantibodies* in *autoimmune* peripheral neuropathies (e.g. anti-GM1, -GQ1b, -GD1b). Induced by infection, *natural autoantibodies* cross-reacting with gangliosides may become pathogenic after *affinity maturation* and *class switching*.

[1]

gastritis, autoimmune

Autoimmune-mediated destruction of the gastric *mucosa* that may result in the development of *pernicious anemia*.

Note: Autoimmune gastritis is associated with *autoantibodies* to H⁺/K⁺-ATPase of gastric parietal cells as well as *autoantibodies* to the intrinsic factor produced by these cells.

[1]

Gell and Coombs classification

Classification of immune mechanisms of tissue injury into four types: type I, *immediate-type hypersensitivity* reactions, mediated by interaction of *immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibody* and *antigen* causing the release of *histamine* and other mediators; type II, antibody-mediated *hypersensitivity* reactions, due

to antibody–antigen interactions on cell surfaces; type III, *immune complex*, local or general inflammatory responses due to formation of circulating immune complexes and their deposition in tissues; and type IV cell-mediated hypersensitivity reactions, initiated by sensitized *T lymphocytes* either by release of *lymphokines* or by T-cell-mediated cytotoxicity [see *cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL)*].

gene knockout

gene targeting Method of disabling a specific gene by homologous recombination with an introduced DNA construct designed for that purpose. See also *knockout, knockout mouse*.

gene rearrangement

Structural alteration in a chromosome that changes the order of its genetic loci, occurring by DNA recombination, e.g., during development or in some cancers.

Note: In *immunology*, it refers to recombination of gene segments in *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and *T-cell receptor (TCR)* loci to produce a functional *variable (V) region* sequence.

gene targeting

See gene knockout.

germ-free

gnotobiotic

Descriptor applied to animals (usually mice) raised in the complete absence of intestinal and other microorganisms.

Note: Such mice have very depleted *immune systems*, but they can respond normally to any specific *antigen*, provided it is mixed with a strong *adjuvant*.

germ line (in immunology)

Refering to genes in their unrearranged state rather than those rearranged for production of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* molecules. After [7]

germinal center

Discrete area within *lymph nodes* and *spleen* where *B-cell maturation* and *memory* development occur. [3]

giant cell

Large multinucleate cell derived from fused *macrophages* and often present in *granulomas*. [3]

glomerulonephritis

Any of a group of kidney diseases involving *inflammation* of the renal glomeruli (see *glomerulus*), often as a result of *antibody-antigen* complexes that localize in the kidney.

Note: Acute *nephritis* is marked by blood in the urine.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

glomerulonephropathy

glomerulopathy

Disease of the renal *glomeruli*, which may show either thickening of the glomerular basement membrane due to the accretion of proteins or a minimal change disease, in which there is functional damage but little structural change by light microscopy.

[1]

glomerulus

Tuft or cluster, as of a plexus of capillary blood vessels or nerve fibers (e.g., capillaries of the filtration apparatus of the kidney).

[5]

glucocorticoid

Any member of the group of endogenous hormones that play an important role in the normal regulation of the *immune system* and act as physiological *immunosuppressants* involved in the control of immune and inflammatory hyperactivity during a stress response.

glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD)

Main *autoantigen* in *diabetes mellitus type 1* and stiff-person syndrome (a neurological *autoimmune disease*).

Note: GAD is localized in pancreatic β cells and γ -aminobutyric acid-responsive (GABAergic) neurons.

[1]

gluten

- 1. Any of the prolamins found in cereal grains, especially the prolamins in wheat, rye, barley, and possibly oats, which cause digestive disorders, notably *celiac disease*.
- 2. In wheat, mixture of water-insoluble proteins, including gliadins, that give wheat dough its elastic texture.

gluten enteropathy

See celiac disease.

gluten intolerance

See celiac disease.

gnotobiotic

See germ-free.

Goodpasture syndrome

Goodpasture disease

Autoimmune disease of humans in which glomerulonephritis and pulmonary hemorrhage are produced by *complement*-mediated tissue damage caused by *antibodies* directed against the renal glomerular and alveolar basement membranes.

graft

Tissue *transplant*ed into a *host* or surgically moved from one site to another within an individual. See also *allograft, autograft, isograft, xenograft*.

graft rejection

Destruction of *grafted* tissue by *host lymphocytes* following an *adaptive immune response*. See also *rejection*.

graft-versus-host disease (GVHD)

Disease that occurs following *bone marrow transplantation* between genetically non-identical people and in which mature *T cells* in the transplanted bone marrow attack and destroy the recipients's tissues. See also *graft-versus-host (GVH) reaction*.

graft-versus-host (GVH) reaction

Reaction occurring when *T lymphocytes* present in a *graft* recognize and attack *host* cells. [3]

granulocyte

Myeloid cell containing cytoplasmic granules (i.e., *neutrophils*, *eosinophils*, and *basophils*). [3]

granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)

Hematopoietic (see *hematopoiesis*) factor augmenting the production of *neutrophils* in the *bone marrow*.

granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF)

Cytokine that stimulates production of granulocytes and monocytes from stem cells.

granulocytopenia

Decreased circulating *granulocytes*. See also *agranulocytosis*.

granuloma

Mass or nodule of granulation tissue, with actively growing *fibroblasts* and capillary buds, characterized by the presence of aggregates of modified *macrophages* resembling epithelial cells (epithelioid histiocytes), and *lymphocytes*, surrounded by a rim of giant multinucleate cells, either of the *Langerhans* or foreign body type.

Note: Granuloma is due to a chronic inflammatory process associated with infectious disease, such as tuberculosis, syphilis, *sarcoidosis*, leprosy, lymphogranuloma, etc., or with invasion by a foreign body.

After [18]

granzyme

Member of a family of serine esterases present in the granules of *cytotoxic T lymphocytes* and *natural killer (NK) cells*. They induce *apoptosis* in the *target cell* that they enter through *perforin* channels inserted into the target cell membrane by the cytotoxic lymphocyte.

[3]

Graves disease

Hyperthyroidism associated with diffuse hyperplastic goitre resulting from production of a *thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (TSHR)*-binding *autoantibody*.

growth factor

Any of a group of biologically active poly-peptides that function as hormone-like regulatory signals, controlling the growth and differentiation of responsive cells.

Guillain–Barré syndrome (GBS)

Type of *idiopathic* polyneuritis in which *autoimmunity* to peripheral nerve myelin leads to a condition characterized by chronic demyelination of the spinal cord and peripheral nerves. [7]

guinea pig maximization test (GPMT)

Skin sensitization test for *allergic contact dermatitis* in which shaved guinea pig skin is exposed to intradermal injections of a test agent together with complete *Freund's adjuvant*, followed by an occlusive patch for boosting (see *booster*) for 48 h beginning on day 7, and *challenged* on day 21.

gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)

Lymphoid cells and tissues lining the *mucosa* that seem to serve as the first point of *antigen* contact via this route, including *Peyer's patches*, the *appendix, tonsils*, adenoids, and mesenteric *lymph nodes*.

Note: Large aggregates of GALT have distinct B-cell follicles and T-cell areas. Antigen-presenting accessory cells are also present.

H-chain

See heavy chain.

H-2

Region of mouse chromosome 17 coding the major histocompability complex (MHC).

H-2 complex

Mouse major histocompatibility complex (MHC) coded by H-2.

hairy cell leukemia

B-cell neoplasm, usually occurring during middle age, constituting about 2 % of all *leukemias* and responding well to chemotherapy. The neoplastic cells have fine, hairlike surfaces. After [19]

© 2012, IUPAC

haplotype

Set of allelic (see *allele*) variants present at a given genetic region. [3]

hapten

Low-molecular-mass molecule that is not itself *immunogenic* unless complexed with a carrier, such as a protein. Once bound, it presents an *epitope* that can cause the *sensitization* of *lymphocytes*. [5]

haptenic

Able to act as a hapten.

Hashimoto thyroiditis

chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis *Autoimmune disease* where the body's own *antibodies* attack the cells of the thyroid.

hay fever

pollenosis

Allergic condition affecting the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract and the eyes, characterized by nasal discharge (see *rhinitis*), sneezing, and itchy, watery eyes; and usually caused by an abnormal sensitivity to airborne pollen.

heat-shock proteins

Evolutionarily conserved proteins, found in many organisms, that are induced upon exposure of cells to various types of stress, including heat, oxidative or hypoxic stress, and deprivation of nutrients or essential ions.

heavy chain

H-chain

Larger of the two types of polypeptide chain found in *immunoglobulin (Ig)* molecules.

Note: Each heavy chain is linked by disulfide bonds to a light chain and to another, identical heavy chain. Each heavy chain consists of an *Fc fragment* and an *Fd fragment*. Heavy chains carry the *antigenic determinants* that differentiate the various immunoglobulin classes.

helper cell

See helper T lymphocyte (Th).

helper T lymphocyte (Th)

helper cell helper T cell T helper cell

Member of a subclass of T lymphocytes that provides help (in the form of cytokines and/or cognate interactions) necessary for the expression of effector function by other cells in the *immune system*.

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

Note: Helper T cells recognize antigen in association with major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II gene products. Depending on their capacity to produce various cytokines, one can functionally differentiate Th1 [interleukin-2- (IL-2-) and IFN-γ-producing] and Th2 (interleukins IL-3-, IL-4-, and IL-6-producing) cells.

Modified from [4]

hemagglutination

Agglutination of erythrocytes.

hemagglutinin

Any molecule that agglutinates *erythrocytes*. See also *agglutination*. [3]

hematopoiesis

Production of *erythrocytes*, *leukocytes*, and *platelets*. [3]

hematopoietic stem cell

Self-renewing *stem cell* that is capable of giving rise to all of the formed elements of the blood (i.e., leukocytes, *erythrocytes*, and *platelets*). [3]

hemolytic anemia Anemia resulting from the lysis of *erythrocytes*.

hemolytic plaque assay See *antibody-forming cell (AFC) assay.*

heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT)

Most frequent *antibody*-mediated drug-induced *thrombocytopenia*, which occurs in 1-2 % of patients treated with heparin intravenously for longer than four days.

Note: This disease is mediated by antibodies to complexes formed between heparin and the endogenous *platelet* factor 4 (PF4).

[1]

hereditary angioneurotic edema

Clinical name for a genetic deficiency of the C1 inhibitor of the complement system.

Note: In the absence of C1 inhibitor, spontaneous activation of the complement system can cause diffuse fluid leakage from blood vessels, the most serious consequence of which is epiglottal swelling leading to suffocation.

[2]

© 2012, IUPAC

heteroantigen

heterogenetic antigen

Identical or similar *cross-reacting antigen* shared by several species (e.g., *Forssman antigen*). *Antibodies* produced against one of these antigens will also react with the other antigens of the set even though these are derived from a different species; such antibodies are also called *heterophile antibodies*. After [20]

heterologous antibody

Antibody derived from another indivual of the same species or another species. See also *autologous antibody*. After [21]

heterologous antigen

Antigen that reacts with an antibody other than the one whose formation it induced.

heterophagy

Digestion of exogenous material taken up by a cell by *phagocytosis* or *pinocytosis*, following fusion of the phagocytic or pinocytic vacuole with a *lysosome*.

heterophile antibody

heterophilic antibody

Antibody raised against an antigen from one species, which also reacts against antigens from other species.

- *Note 1*: Heterophile antibodies are usually of low affinity and are a common cause of problems with *immunoassays*.
- *Note 2*: The existence of such antibodies explains observations of the presence of antibody against antigens from a variety of species without *immunization*.

Note 3: Heterophile antibodies commonly arise from viral infection.

See also Forssman antigen.

heterophile antigen

heterophilic antigen

Antigen that stimulates production in a vertebrate of *antibodies* capable of reacting with tissue components having related antigens in a wide range of other species. See also *Forssman antigen*.

heterozygous

Possessing different *alleles* at a given locus on the two homologous chromosomes. [3]

high endothelial venule (HEV)

Specialized venule in *lymphoid* tissues that has walls permeable to migrating *lymphocytes*, allowing them to move from blood into the lymphoid tissues.

highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART)

Approach to the treatment of *acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)* patients involving a combination of nucleoside analogs, which prevent reverse transcription, with drugs that inhibit responses to the virus.

After [2]

high-mobility group box (HMGB) protein

Any of a group of universal sensors of nucleic acids, required for the induction of transmembrane and cytoplasmic receptor-mediated *innate immune responses*. After [22]

hinge region

Amino acids between the Fab and Fc regions of *immunoglobulin* (Ig) that permit flexibility of the molecule.

[3]

histamine

2-(1H-imidazol-4-yl)ethan-1-amine

Amine derived from histidine by decarboxylation and released from cells in the *immune system*, especially *mast cells*, as part of an *allergic* reaction.

Note: It is a powerful stimulant of gastric secretion, constrictor of bronchial smooth muscle, and vasodilator.

[5]

histaminosis

Histamine intolerance, which may contribute to food intolerance as part of a pseudoallergic reaction.

histocompatibility

Relationship between a tissue or organ donor and a recipient who have sufficient similarity in *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) antigens* to avoid *rejection* of a *graft*.

histoincompatibility

Relationship between a tissue or organ donor and a recipient who have sufficient differences in *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) antigens* to cause *rejection* of a *graft*.

hives

nettle rash

urticaria

Vascular reaction pattern of the skin marked by the transient appearance of smooth, slightly elevated patches (*wheals*) that are either more red or more pale than the surrounding skin and are accompanied by severe itching.

Note: They are usually, but not always, caused by an *allergic* reaction to food or to a drug, but can also be induced by physical stimuli such as cold or exercise.

© 2012, IUPAC

Hodgkin disease

Hodgkin lymphoma

Immune system tumor characterized by large cells called *Reed–Sternberg cells* that derive from mutated B-lineage cells.

Note: Hodgkin disease exists in at least two forms, Hodgkin lymphoma and nodular sclerosis. [2]

homing

Movement of *leukocytes* to specific locations in the body.

homing receptor

Cell surface molecule that directs *leukocytes* to specific locations in the body. [3]

homocytotropic antibody

Antibody that binds preferentially to cells from the same species rather than to cells from other species. After [21] See also *autologous antibody*, *heterologous antibody*, *heterophile antibody*.

homozygous

Possessing the same *allele* at a given locus on the two homologous chromosomes. [3]

horror autotoxicus

Term (Latin: dread of self-poisoning) to describe the body's innate aversion to immunological self-destruction.

Note: Introduced by Paul Ehrlich (1902).

host (in immunology)

Recipient of foreign cells or tissue, or of an infectious agent.

host defense

Ability of an individual to resist invasion by opportunistic agents and production of disease associated with exposure to microorganisms, foreign tissue, and particulates, as well as certain types of neoplasia. Host defense may be either nonspecific (*innate* or *natural immunity*) or specific (*adaptive* or *acquired immunity*) in nature.

Note: Immunological defense may involve *chemotaxis*, *phagocytosis*, reaction with *immunoglobulins* (*Ig*) and/or with *complement*, and *T-cell cytotoxicity*.

host-resistance assay

Evaluation of *host resistance* in rodents to in vivo *challenge* with an infectious organism under normal conditions and after pharmacological and nutritional alterations of the *immune system*.

human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)

Causative agent of acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS).

- *Note 1*: HIV is a retrovirus of the lentivirus family that selectively infects *macrophages* and *CD4+ T cells*, leading to their slow depletion, eventually resulting in *immunodeficiency*.
- *Note 2*: There are two major strains of the virus, HIV-1 and HIV-2, of which HIV-1 causes most disease worldwide. HIV-2 is endemic to West Africa but is spreading.

[2]

humanized antibody

Genetically engineered *monoclonal antibody* of non-human origin in which all but the *antigen*-binding *complementarity-determining region (CDR)* sequences have been replaced with sequences derived from human antibodies.

Note: This procedure is carried out to minimize the *immunogen*icity of *therapeutic*, *mono-clonal antibodies*.

[3]

human leukocyte antigen (HLA)

Antigen coded by genes of the human major histocompatibility complex (MHC).

- *Note 1*: Human HLA-A, -B and -C (resembling mouse H-2K, D and L) are *MHC class I* molecules, whereas HLA-DP, -DQ and -DR (resembling mouse I-A and I-E) are *MHC class II* molecules.
- Note 2: The genes for HLAs are situated on chromosome 6.

After [1]

human leukocyte antigen (HLA) polymorphism

Discontinuous genetic variation in the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* that results in the occurrence of several different forms of MHC molecules among people.

Note: Specific HLA polymorphisms are associated with a number of diseases, e.g., HLA-B27 is associated with ankylosing spondylitis, psoriatic arthritis, *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, etc., and some chemical sensitivities.

human leukocyte antigen (HLA) type I

Molecules that enable the body to recognize infected cells and tumor cells and destroy them with *cyto-toxic T lymphocytes (CTLs)*.

Note: HLA type I molecules are made by all nucleated cells in the body, possess a deep groove (see *peptide-binding groove*) that can bind peptide *epitopes*, typically 8–11 amino acids long, from endogenous *antigens*; and present HLA type I/peptide complexes to *CD*8+ *lymphocytes* that have a complementary shaped *T-cell receptor (TCR)*.

human leukocyte antigen (HLA) type II

Molecules that enable CD4+ lymphocytes to recognize epitopes of exogenous antigens and discriminate self from non-self.

Note: HLA type II molecules are made by *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)*, such as *dendritic cells, macrophages*, and *B lymphocytes*, possess a deep groove (see *peptide-binding groove*) that can bind peptide *epitopes*, typically 10–30 amino acids long but with an optimum length of 12–16 amino acids, from exogenous antigens; and present HLA type II/peptide complexes to CD4+ lymphocytes that have a complementary shaped *T-cell receptor (TCR)*.

humoral

Pertaining to extracellular fluid such as *plasma* and *lymph*.

Note: The term *humoral immunity* is used to denote *antibody*-mediated *immune responses* such as *phagocytosis* and activation of the *complement system*.

Modified from [3]

humoral immune response

Immune response in which specific *antibodies* induce the effector functions (such as *phagocytosis* and activation of the *complement system*). [1]

humoral immunity

Specific *immune response* that is mediated primarily by humoral factors circulating in solution in the *blood plasma* and *lymph* (i.e., *antibodies* and *complement*).

Note: The induction of the *humoral immune response* generally requires the cooperation of cellular immune mechanisms.

humorally mediated immunity (HMI)

See humoral immunity.

hybridoma

Hybrid cell line obtained by fusing a lymphoid tumor cell with a *lymphocyte*. The resultant cell line has both the immortality of the tumor cell and the effector function (e.g., *monoclonal antibody* secretion) of the lymphocyte.

[3]

hygiene hypothesis See *counter-regulation hypothesis*.

hypergammaglobulinemia

Increase of *gammaglobulins* in the blood by paraproteinemia or increased production of *immunoglobulins* (*Ig*).

[1]

hyperimmunoglobulin E syndrome Job syndrome Rare *primary immunodeficiency* syndrome characterized by recurrent severe staphylococcal skin abscesses (hence Job syndrome), lung infections, and markedly elevated *serum immunoglobulin E (IgE)* levels.

hyperimmunoglobulin M syndrome (HIGM)

Primary *T cell* defect due to mutations in the *CD40 ligand* (*CD40L*), characterized by recurrent (opportunistic) infections and very low levels of *immunoglobulin G* (*IgG*) and *immunoglobulin A* (*IgA*).

Note: Autoimmune manifestations (e.g., cytopenia, arthritis, sclerosing cholangitis) are often seen.

After [1]

hyperreactivity

Abnormally increased response to a stimulus. [4]

hypersensitivity

State in which an individual reacts with *allergic* effects following exposure to a certain substance (*allergen*) after having been exposed previously to the same substance. It is sometimes used loosely for any increased response.

Note: Four types of hypersensitivity are recognized. Most common chemically induced allergies are type I [*immunoglobulin E- (IgE-)* mediated] and type IV (cell-mediated) hypersensitivity.

See also allergy, Gell and Coombs classification. After [5]

hypersensitivity pneumonitis (HPS)

extrinsic allergic alveolitis

Immune-mediated inflammatory disease of the lung parenchyma caused by exposure to an inhaled chemical *allergen* or organic dust.

[4]

hypersensitization

Development of excessive immune reactivity to an antigen.

hypersusceptibility

Adverse immunological effects in an individual occurring under conditions of exposure to an *allergen* that result in no effects in the great majority of the population, or an individual exhibiting exaggerated effects in comparison with the great majority of those showing some adverse effects. After [4]

hypervariable region

Amino acid sequence within the *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable (V) regions* that shows the greatest variability and contributes most to the *antigen* or peptide-*major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* binding site.

[3]

hypogammaglobulinemia

Immunodeficiency state marked by abnormally low levels of all classes of *immunoglobulins* (*Ig*), associated with increased susceptibility to infectious diseases.

Note: It may be primary (inherited), or secondary (acquired), or it may occur physiologically in normal *neonates*.

hyposensitization therapy

Dermal application of a selected *allergen* to an *allergic* person in stepwise increasing dosage, with the aim of reducing the *immune system's* tendency for the corresponding *allergic reaction*.

Ia antigen

I region-associated antigen immune response-associated antigen

Isooantigen encoded by the Ia region of the mouse major histocompatibility complex (H-2 complex).

- *Note 1:* Ia *antigens* are defined by serological methods (see *serology*) and are found predominantly on *B lymphocytes* and *macrophages*.
- *Note 2*: This term is also used as a generic term for any *major histocompatibility complex* (*MHC*) class II antigen.

See also immune response-associated (Ia) protein.

idiopathic

Term that describes a "primary" symptom or disease in which no underlying cause or associated disorder can be found.

Note: In many cases, *autoimmune* processes are involved in the pathogenesis [e.g., idiopathic *Addison disease*, idiopathic *thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)*].

idiopathic environmental intolerance

See multiple chemical sensitivity.

idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)

Thrombocytopenia of unknown cause, probably related to the production of anti-*platelet* antibodies, and leading to bruising (*purpura*).

idiosyncratic drug reaction (IDR)

Rare and unpredictable adverse drug reaction occurring only in susceptible individuals.

Note: A dose–reponse relationship may not be apparent within the dose range used clinically.

idiotope

Epitope made up of amino acids within the *variable* (*V*) *region* of an *antibody* or *T-cell receptor* (*TCR*) that reacts with an anti-idiotope antibody.

After [3]

Note: The anti-idiotopic region of the anti-idiotope antibody may mimic the epitope-binding characteristics of the *antigen* without sharing any sequence homology.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

See also anti-idiotypic antibody, idiotype.

idiotype

The combined *antigenic determinants (idiotopes)* expressed in the *variable (V) region* of *immuno-globulins (Ig)* of an individual that determine *antibody* specificity to a particular *antigen*. See also *anti-idiotypic antibody*. After [2,102]

idiotype network

idiotypic network

Regulatory network based on interactions of *anti-idiotypic antibodies* and *idiotypes* present on *antibodies* and *T-cell receptors (TCRs)*, resulting in feedback inhibition of ongoing *B cell* or *T cell* responses.

After [1,3]

immature (in immunology)

Describing cells that are not fully developed and unable to participate immediately in an *immune* response.

Note: Immature *B cells* and *T cells* migrate from their *primary lymphoid* sites (*bone marrow* and *thymus*) through the vascular and *lymphatic systems* to *secondary lymphoid* sites. These sites include the *spleen*, *lymph nodes*, *tonsils*, and *Peyer's patches* in the intestine and *appendix*. The immature B cells and T cells mature only after they encounter an *antigen*.

immediate-type hypersensitivity

immediate-type allergy

type I hypersensitivity

Reaction provoked by re-exposure to an *antigen (allergen)* that causes *plasma cells* to secrete *immunoglobulin E (IgE)* which binds to *Fc receptors* on the surface of tissue *mast cells* and blood *basophils*, sensitizing them, so that later exposure to the same allergen cross-links the bound IgE, leading to *degranulation* and the secretion of pharmacologically active mediators such as *histamine*, *leukotriene*, and *prostaglandin* that act immediately on the surrounding tissues.

Note: The principal effects of these products are vasodilation and smooth-muscle contraction. The reaction may be either local or *systemic*. Symptoms vary from mild irritation to sudden death from *anaphylactic shock*.

immune adherence

Attachment of particulate *antigen* coated with C3b (see *complement*) to cells expressing C3b *receptors*, which results in enhanced *phagocytosis* of bacteria by *macrophages*. After [7]

immune complex

Product of an *antigen–antibody* reaction, which may also contain components of the *complement system*.

[5]

immune complex disease

Illness resulting from deposition of antigen-antibody complexes in tissues.

immune deviation

Regulatory mechanism of the preferential activation of one aspect (cellular or humoral) of the *adaptive immune system* at the expense of the other.

Note: Although not a form of true *tolerance*, this regulatory mechanism may be involved in the induction and maintenance of *self-tolerance*.

After [1]

immune elimination

Removal of pathogens or tumor cells by the immune system; the first step of *immunoediting* of tumors.

immune enhancement

Therapeutic stimulation of the immune response, especially in tumor therapy.

immune equilibrium

State in carcinogenesis where there is an equilibrium between elimination of tumor cells by the *immune* system and growth of non-*immunogenic* tumor cells; the second step in *immunoediting*.

immune escape

Biological feature of an infectious agent or of a tumor cell that prevents its elimination by the *immune* system. Such a feature can be acquired by a selection process. Immune escape is the third step in *immunoediting* of tumors.

immune evasion

Property of a pathogen that results in avoidance of attack by the *immune system*, e.g., because of reduced *phagocytosis*, lack of recognition by the *innate immune system*, or *suppression* of the *immune response*.

immune modulation

immunomodulation

Alteration of the *immune response* to alleviate harmful effects of the *immune system* or to promote its activity by changes in regulatory factors; often part of deliberate therapeutic intervention.

immune regulation

immunoregulation

Capacity of the *immune system* to regulate itself so that an *immune response* does not become excessive and cause tissue damage, *autoimmune* reactions, or *allergic reactions*. [2]

immune reserve hypothesis

Hypothesis that the *immune response* involves multiple redundancies that are capable of compensating for acute reductions in certain immune functions.

Note: Such a reserve might prevent a serious reduction in *host resistance* after temporary *immunosuppression* of selected parameters [e.g., *natural killer (NK) cell* function].

immune response

Selective reaction of the body to substances that are foreign to it, or that the *immune system* identifies as foreign, shown by the production of *antibodies* and antibody-bearing cells or by a cell-mediated *hypersensitivity* reaction.

[5] See also *cell-mediated immune response*.

immune response-associated (Ia) protein

Protein found in *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)* and *B lymphocytes* in mice. Compare *Ia antigen*.

immune response genes

Genes, including those within the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*, that together determine the overall level of *immune response* to a given *antigen*. [3]

immune surveillance

immunosurveillance

Recognition, and in some cases elimination, of tumor cells by the *immune system* before they become clinically detectable.

[2]

immune system

Integrated network of organs, glands, and tissues that has evolved to protect the body from foreign substances, including bacteria, viruses, and other infection-causing parasites and pathogens.

Note: The immune system may produce *hypersensitivity* reactions that, in the extreme, can be fatal. If the immune system misidentifies normal body components as foreign, this leads to *autoimmune* disorders, such as *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, in which the body destroys its own constituents.

[5]

immune thrombocytopenic purpura

See thrombocytopenic purpura, idiopathic (ITP).

immunity

Inherited, acquired, or induced *resistance* to infection by a specific pathogen.

immunization

Making an organism immune to a specific agent, such as an *allergen*, pathogen, or cancer cell. See also *active immunization*, *passive immunization*.
immunoactivation

Activation of the *immune system* as a whole to react more rapidly to *antigens*.

immunoactivator

Substance that activates the *immune system* as a whole to react more rapidly to *antigens*.

immunoadsorption

Method for removal of *antibody* or *antigen* by allowing it to bind to a corresponding antigen or antibody immobilized in the solid phase. After [3]

immunoassay

Ligand-binding assay that uses a specific *antigen* or *antibody*, capable of binding to the analyte, to identify and quantify substances. The antibody can be linked to a radioisotope [*radioimmunoassay* (*RIA*)] or to an enzyme that catalyzes an easily monitored reaction [*enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay* (*ELISA*)], or to a highly fluorescent compound by which the location of an antigen can be visualized (*immunofluorescence*).

[5]

immunoblot

Supporting substrate [often a nitrocellulose, nylon, or poly(vinylidene fluoride) membrane] onto which proteins that have been separated by gel electrophoresis are transferred and then identified by the binding of specific *antibodies*.

See also immunoblotting.

immunoblotting

western blotting

Technique for the detection, isolation, and quantitative measurement of specific immunoreactive polypeptides, separated into bands by polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, after which the bands are transferred from the gel to a membrane (*immunoblot*), followed by immunological detection of the immobilized *antigen* by the binding of specific *antibodies* typically labeled with peroxidase or radioactivity.

immunochemistry

Study of biochemical and molecular aspects of *immunology*, especially the nature of *antibodies*, *antigens*, and their interactions.

[5]

immunocompeten/ce (n), /t (adj)

Having the ability to exhibit an immune response.

immunocompromised

Unable to mount a full or effective immune response.

1186

immunocytochemistry

See immunohistochemistry.

immunoconjugate

antibody conjugate *Antibody* or antibody fragment to which a functional molecule, such as a drug, has been chemically linked. See also *immunocytokine*.

immunocytokine

Antibody or antibody fragment to which a cytokine has been chemically linked.

Note: Such a construct may be used to direct a cytokine to its target cell.

immunodeficien/cy (n), /t (adj)

Inability to produce a normal repertoire of *antibodies* or immunologically sensitized *T lymphocytes*, especially in response to specific *antigens*.

- *Note 1*: Defects in one or more components of the *immune system* result in the inability to eliminate or neutralize antigens.
- *Note 2*: Congenital or primary immunodeficiencies are genetic or due to developmental disorders, such as congenital *thymic* aplasia (see also *thymic atrophy*).
- *Note 3*: Acquired or secondary immunodeficiencies develop as a consequence of malnutrition, malignancies, *immunosuppressive* compounds, radiation or infection of *immunocompetent* T lymphocytes with *human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)*.

Note 4: Defects in *natural immunity* may also result in immunodeficiency. Modified from [4]

immunodominant epitope

Epitope in an *antigen* that is preferentially recognized by T cells, which then come to dominate the *immune response*.

After [2]

immunodysregulation-polyendocrinopathy-enteropathy, X-linked

IPEX syndrome

X-linked syndrome characterized by immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy (*diabetes mellitus type 1, thyroiditis*), *hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, dermatitis*, and enteropathy, caused by mutations in the gene encoding *Foxp3*.

[1]

immunoediting

Process of continuing *immunosuppression* of *immunogen*ic tumor cells, which may finally result in the selection of non-immunogenic tumor cells. It consists of the steps *immune elimination*, *immune equilibrium*, and *immune escape*.

immunofluorescence

Technique for detection of cell- or tissue-associated *antigens* by the use of a fluorescently tagged *ligand*, e.g., an anti-*immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) *conjugated* to *fluorescein isothiocyanate* (*FITC*). [3]

immunogen

Any substance that elicits an immune response.

Note: Whilst all *immunogens* are *antigens*, not all antigens are immunogens. See also *hapten*. After [3,4]

immunoglobulin (Ig)

Member of a glycoprotein family to which antibodies and B-cell receptors (BCRs) belong.

- *Note 1*: Immunoglobulins bind to substances in the body that are recognized as foreign *antigens* (often proteins on the surface of bacteria and viruses).
- *Note 2*: Immunoglobulins also play a central role in *allergies* when they bind to antigens that are not otherwise a threat to health and provoke an inflammatory reaction.

See also immunoglobulins A, D, E, G, and M.

immunoglobulin A (IgA)

Class of *immunoglobulin* (Ig) characterized by α heavy chains.

Note: IgA antibodies are secreted mainly by *mucosal lymphoid* tissues, and in the dimeric form are present in mucosal secretions. IgA in the monomeric form is present in blood. After [2]

$immunoglobulin \ D \ (IgD)$

Class of *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) characterized by δ *heavy chains*.

Note: It appears as a surface immunoglobulin on mature näive *B cells* (see *näive lymphocyte*) but its function is unknown.

After [2]

immunoglobulin E (IgE)

Class of *immunoglobulin* (Ig) characterized by ε heavy chains.

Note: It is involved in the defense against parasite infections and in *allergic reactions*. After [2]

immunoglobulin Y (IgY)

Immunoglobulin (Ig) found in chickens.

immunoglobulin E (IgE)-binding Fc receptors

High-*affinity* IgE-binding *Fc*-*\varepsilon*-R type I *receptors* are expressed on *mast* cells and *basophils* and interact with IgE *antibodies* with high affinity.

Note 1: The cross-linking of these receptors results in release of mediators such as histamine.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

- *Note 2*: The receptors are composed of α , β , and γ chains; the α chain contains the IgE binding site, while the γ chain is responsible for *signal transduction*.
- *Note 3*: The low-affinity IgE binding *Fc receptor* (*CD23*) is expressed on *B cells*, and its soluble (truncated) form is generated by proteolytic cleavage and regulates IgE production by B cells.

After [4]

immunoglobulin E (IgE)-mediated hypersensitivity

State in which an individual reacts with *allergic* effects caused fundamentally by the reaction of *anti-gen*-specific *immunoglobulin E (IgE)* following exposure to a certain substance (*allergen*) after having been exposed previously to the same substance.

[5]

immunoglobulin G (IgG)

Class of *immunoglobulin* (Ig) characterized by γ heavy chains.

Note: It is the most abundant class of immunoglobulin found in the *plasma*. After [2]

immunoglobulin M (IgM)

Class of *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) characterized by μ heavy chains.

Note 1: It is the first immunoglobulin to appear on the surface of *B cells* and the first to be secreted.

After [2]

Note 2: Unlike other immunoglobulins that that exist in the monomeric (IgA, IgD, IgE, and IgG) or dimeric (IgA) state, IgM is found in the blood as a pentamer.

immunoglobulin gene superfamily

Genes encoding proteins containing one or more *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) *domains* (homology units) that are homologous to either Ig variable (V) region or constant (C) region domains. Cell surface and soluble molecules mediating recognition, adhesion, or binding functions in and outside the *immune system*, derived from the same precursor, belong to this family of molecules (e.g., immunoglobulin, *T-cell receptor (TCR), major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I* and *class II molecules*, *CD4*, *CD8*, and Fc γ R).

[1]

immunoglobulin superfamily

Large family of proteins characterized by possession of "immunoglobulin-type" domains of approximately 110 amino acids folded into two β -pleated sheets. Members include *immunoglobulins A*, *E*, *G*, *M* (*IgA*, *IgE*, *IgG*, and *IgM*), *T*-cell receptors (*TCRs*), and *human leukocyte antigen* (*HLA*) major histocompatibility complex (*MHC*) molecules.

See also human leukocyte antigen (HLA), immunoglobulin (Ig), major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule.

[3]

immunohistochemistry

Detection of cell-associated molecules in the light microscope with *antibodies* labeled with enzymes that change a substrate into a colored precipitate.

immunological ignorance

Absence of a pathogenic *autoimmune* response in spite of the concomitant presence in the *host* of the *autoantigen* and *T cells* bearing the specific autoreactive *T-cell receptor (TCR)*.

immunological incompetence

Inability of the *immune system* to function in a normal fashion.

immunologically privileged site

Any of various sites in the body where foreign tissue grafts do not induce an immune reaction.

Note: Such sites include the eye, brain, testis, and unborn fetus. Although *antigens* do migrate from these privileged sites, they either induce *immunological tolerance* or a nondestructive response.

immunological memory

immunological anamnesis

Ability of the *immune system* to respond faster and more effectively to subsequent exposures to an *anti-gen* following a *primary immune response* to the same antigen.

Note: Typically, *memory T cells* appear five days following initial immunization, whereas *memory B cells* may take about a month to reach maximum levels. Populations of such cells may persist for the lifetime of the individual.

immunological synapse

Contact point between the *T cell* and *antigen-presenting cell (APC)* that is generated by reorganization and clustering of cell surface molecules in *lipid rafts*. The synapse facilitates interactions between *T-cell receptor (TCR)* and *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules*, and between *adhesion molecules*, thereby potentiating a TCR-mediated activation signal. [3]

immunological tolerance

Persistent specific immunological unresponsiveness toward a substance that would normally be expected to elicit an *immune response*, resulting from previous non-sensitizing exposure to an *antigen*.

Note: Tolerance to specific foreign antigens can be induced by the exposure to the foreign antigens during embryonic or neonatal life (depending upon species). In adults, tolerance (usually of shorter duration) can be induced by using particular routes of administration for the antigens or administration of agents that are particularly effective against cells proliferating in response to antigen. Mechanisms may include deletion of potentially reactive *lymphocytes* or their "inactivation" by immunological *suppression*.

Modified from [3,20]

immunology

Science that deals with the *immune system* including *cell-mediated immunity* (CMI) and *humoral* aspects of *immunity* and *immune responses*.

immunomagnetic separation

Method of separating specific cell types or macromolecules with the aid of cell-specific *antibodies* coupled to paramagnetic beads.

immunomodulation

Modification of the functioning of the *immune system* by the action of a substance that increases or reduces the ability to produce an *immune response*. After [5]

immunopathology

- 1. Study of diseases of the *immune system*.
- 2. The occurrence of such diseases.

immunopathy

Disease of the *immune system*. See also *immunopathology*.

immunopharmacology

- 1. Study of the *immune system* using drugs as diagnostic tools.
- 2. Use of pharmaceutical molecules to support and stimulate the immune system in patients with *immunodeficiency*, or to suppress or specifically influence the reactivity of the immune system in order to control a pathological immune reaction or disease.

immunophenotyping

Use of a panel of *antibodies* to determine a subset of proteins expressed on the surface of a cell or heterogeneous group of cells, often for diagnostic purposes, e.g., identifying the presence of *leukemia* cells in a population of *lymphocytes*.

immunophilin

Any of a group of cytoplasmic proteins in *T cells* that are targets of the *immunosuppressant* drugs cyclosporin A, tacrolimus (fujimycin), rapamycin, and related compounds. See also Annex II for specific substances.

immunopotentiation

Enhancement of the capacity of the *immune system* to produce an effective response. [5]

immunoprecipitate

Precipitate formed in an *antigen–antibody* reaction.

© 2012, IUPAC

immunoprecipitation

Process of precipitating something by reaction with a specific antibody or antigen.

immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM)

Consensus sequence for src-family *tyrosine kinases*, found in the cytoplasmic domains of several signaling molecules including the *signal transduction* units of *lymphocyte antigen receptors* and of *Fc receptors*.

[3]

immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM)

Consensus sequence present in the cytoplasmic domains of certain cell surface molecules [e.g., Fc γ RIIB, inhibitory *natural killer (NK) cell receptors*] and which mediates inhibitory signals. [3]

immunosensitivity

Reactivity to antigens.

immunosensitizer

Substance that makes the *immune system* more reactive to *antigens*.

immunosorbent

Solid matrix on to which a specific *antibody* or *antigen* is adsorbed and used to capture the corresponding antigen or antibody from solution.

immunostimulating complex (ISCOM)

Immunological *adjuvant* composed of saponin, cholesterol, phospholipid, and an *immunogen*, usually protein.

Note: The adjuvant was originally designed to form a *vaccine* delivery system that combined certain aspects of virus particles such as their size and orientation of surface proteins, with the powerful immunostimulatory activity of saponins.

After [23]

immunostimulation

Increase in immune function, e.g., by use of bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine or drugs.

Note: Immunostimulation may be beneficial (e.g., restoration of a depressed *immune* response) or detrimental (e.g., induction by drugs of *allergy*, *hypersensitivity*, or *autoimmunity*).

immunosuppressant

Substance that depresses the function of the *immune system*.

immunosuppression

Depression of the normal functioning of the *immune system*.

Note: This may be due to:

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

- i. Inhibition of the normal response of the immune system to an *antigen*.
- ii. Prevention, by chemical or biological means, of the production of an *antibody* to an antigen by inhibition of the processes of transcription, translation, or formation of tertiary structure.

After [5]

immunosuppressive

Causing depression of the normal function of the *immune system*.

immunosurveillance

Mechanisms by which the *immune system* is able to recognize and destroy malignant cells before the formation of an overt tumor.

[5]

immunotherapy

Treatment or prevention of a disease using agents that can modify the *immune response*.

- *Note 1*: Immunotherapy is largely an experimental approach, applied most widely in the treatment of *leukemias*, melanoma, and hypernephroma.
- *Note 2:* Immunotherapy may involve *active* or *passive immunization*, *immunopotentiation* or *immunosuppression*, *hyposensitization*, *bone marrow transplantation*, or *thymus* implantation.

immunotoxic

Harmful to the *immune system*. [5]

immunotoxicant

Substance that is harmful to the *immune system*.

immunotoxicology

Discipline applying cardinal principals of both *immunology* and toxicology to study the ability of certain substances to alter the *immune response*.

immunotoxin

Biochemical *conjugate*, or recombinant fusion protein, consisting of an immune targeting molecule such as an *antibody* or antibody fragment together with a *cytotoxic* molecule. [3]

Compare *toxin*.

inactivated vaccine

Vaccine formulated from the whole microorganism that has been rendered unable to reproduce or cause disease, often by mutation or heat denaturation. See also *attenuated vaccine*.

See Coombs test.

indirect Coombs test

See Coombs test.

indirect immunofluorescence

Method of visualizing an *antigen* in which an unlabeled *antibody* against the antigen is reacted with it first, and then is detected by staining with a second fluorescently tagged *immunoglobulin* G (IgG) directed against the first antibody.

indolamine-2,3-dioxygenase (IDO)

Enzyme catalyzing the initial rate-limiting step of *tryptophan* degradation.

Note: Tryptophan is required for *T-cell* proliferation. Local degradation of tryptophan thus modulates T-cell activity.

inducible co-stimulatory protein (ICOS)

Highly specific *receptor* for the protein B7H/B7RP-1 that is expressed on the surface of *B cells* and *macrophages*, and also appears on the surface of *T cells* during the process of T-cell *activation*.

Note: Stimulation of the *B cell* and subsequent *antibody* production takes place after the ICOS *receptor* attaches to its partner B7RP-1 molecule. Thus, the co-stimulatory molecules, ICOS and B7H/B7RP-1, provide specificity for the *immune system* activation process.

infectious tolerance

Continuing state of *tolerance* that can be transferred by *T lymphocytes* from a tolerant animal.

Note: Maintenance of *transplantation* tolerance involves the induction of *antigen*-specific *CD4+ regulatory T cells (Treg)*.

After [24]

infertility, autoimmune

Infertility caused by sperm *antibodies*, *autoimmune* ovarian *inflammation* (oophoritis), or autoimmune orchitis.

Note: This disease may be part of a polyendocrinopathy.

[1]

inflammasome

High-molecular-weight complex that activates inflammatory *caspases* and the *cytokines interleukin*-1 β (IL-1 β) and IL-18.

Note: There appear to be at least three types of inflammasomes. Those identified initially were the NALP1 inflammasome, the *NALP3 (cryopyrin)* inflammasome, and the *interleukin-*(IL-)1β converting enzyme (ICE) protease-activating factor (IPAF) inflammasome.

[25]

See also *inflammation*.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

inflammation

Reaction of the body to injury or to infectious, *allergic*, or chemical irritation; characterized by redness, swelling, heat, and pain resulting from dilation of the blood vessels accompanied by loss of *plasma* and *leucocytes* into the tissues.

[5]

inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)

Group of chronic inflammatory conditions resulting in the inappropriate and persistent activation of the *mucosal immune system* of the bowel.

- *Note 1: Idiopathic* IBD is a set of chronic conditions probably driven by the presence of normal intestinal flora.
- *Note 2: Autoantibodies* against proteins of *neutrophil granulocytes*, pancreatic acinus, intestinal goblet, and colonic epithelial cells are detectable.
- *Note 3*: *Crohn disease* and ulcerative colitis are two variants of IBD with overlapping clinical manifestations and probable *autoimmune* origins. Crohn disease is immunologically characterized by antibody to <u>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</u> and *Th1 cell*-dominated responses.

After [1,19]

inflammatory response

See inflammation.

innate immunity

Immunity that is not intrinsically affected by prior contact with *antigen*, i.e., all aspects of immunity not directly mediated by *lymphocytes*. [3]

insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM)

See diabetes mellitus type 1.

integrin

Member of a family of heterodimeric *adhesion molecules*, mediating attachment of the cell to other cells or to the extracellular matrix, and thereby signaling information to the cell about its surroundings.

intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM)

Member of the *immunoglobulin superfamily* that interacts with *integrins* and is found on the surface of several cell types, including *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)* and *T cells*.

interclonal competition

Process which favors survival of foreign-specific *lymphocytes* at the expense of self-specific lymphocytes and is a secondary mechanism involved in the induction and maintenance of *self-tolerance*. After [1]

interdigitating dendritic cell

See dendritic cell.

interferon (IFN)

Any glycoprotein produced by cells in response to stimuli, such as exposure to a virus, bacterium, parasite, or other *antigen*, that prevents viral replication in newly infected cells and, in some cases, modulate specific cellular functions.

- *Note 1*: There are three classes: α , β , and γ . Alpha interferon (IFN- α) is made by *lymphocytes* and *macrophages*. Beta interferon (IFN- β) is synthesized by *fibroblasts* and epithelial cells. Alpha and β interferons were once called type 1 interferon. Gamma interferon [see γ -interferon (IFN- γ)], also called type 2 interferon, is synthesized by lymphocytes.
- *Note 2*: All three interferon classes can be induced during viral infection. They have antiviral and antiproliferative effects, and all induce expression of *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules*.

interleukin (IL)

Member of a group of immunoregulatory glycoproteins, also called *lymphokines*, *monokines*, or *cytokines*.

- *Note 1*: General features are low molecular mass (about 80 kDa) and frequent glycosylation; regulation of immune cell function and *inflammation* by binding to specific cell surface *receptors*; transient and local production; action in *paracrine*, *autocrine*, or endocrine manner, with stimulatory or blocking effect on growth/differentiation; very potent, function at picomolar concentrations.
- *Note 2*: Interleukins represent an extensive series of mediators with a wide range of overlapping functions. Other mediators in this series are c-kit *ligand*, *interferons (IFNs)*, *tumor necrosis factor (TNF)*, *transforming growth factor* β (*TGF-* β), and a family of low relative molecular mass mediators, called *chemokines*.

Modified from [4]

internal image

Epitope on an anti-*idiotype* that binds in a way that structurally and functionally mimics the *antigen*. [3]

intolerance (in immunology)

Extreme sensitivity or *allergy* to a drug, food, or other substance.

intradermal test

Diagnostic test for a possible cause of *hypersensitivity* in an individual in which a small drop of *anti*gen is placed on a scarified skin surface or injected intradermally.

Note: Production of an *immune response* in the treated skin represents a positive result.

intra-epithelial lymphocyte (IEL)

Lymphocyte found in the epithelial layer of mammalian *mucosal* linings, such as those of the gastrointestinal and reproductive tracts.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

intrinsic pathway (of apoptosis)

Pathway of cell death initiated from within the cell, usually in response to signals following DNA damage, a defective cell cycle, detachment from the extracellular matrix, hypoxia, loss of cell survival factors, or other types of severe cell stress.

Note: This pathway involves the release of pro-*apoptotic* proteins from the mitochondria. See also *apoptosis*, *extrinsic pathway* (*of apoptosis*).

invariant chain

CD74

Protein (31 kDa) of the endoplasmic reticulum lumen that binds to newly formed *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* heterodimeric proteins, preventing binding of endogenous peptides to their groove.

Note: This protein acts as a chaperone for these molecules until they leave the Golgi apparatus and enter the *endosome* pathway. It is degraded proteolytically but leaves a fragment (called CLIP) bound within the groove of the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class III molecules*. In acid vesicles, after leaving the Golgi apparatus, CLIP exchanges with peptides derived from exogenous *antigens*.

IPEX syndrome

See immunodysregulation-polyendocrinopathy-enteropathy, X-linked.

ir genes

See immune response genes.

islet cell antibodies (ICA)

Autoantibodies reacting with endocrine (pancreatic islet) cells and detectable by *indirect immuno-fluorescence* on pancreatic cryostat sections.

Note: Islet cell antibodies are diagnostic markers of diabetes mellitus type 1.

isoantigen

See alloantigen.

isograft

syngraft Tissue *transplant*ed (see *graft*) between two genetically identical individuals.

isohemagglutinin

Naturally occurring *imunoglobulin M (IgM) antibody* specific for the *erythrocyte antigens* of the *ABO blood groups*, thought to result from *immunization* by bacteria in the gastrointestinal and respiratory tracts.

After [7]

isotype

Class of antibody that differs from others in the constant region of the heavy chain (Fc portion).

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

isotype control

Antibody exhibiting the non-specific characteristics of the antibody-*isotype* but lacking any specificity for the *antigen* in question; used as a negative control in antibody-antigen detection assays, notably in *flow cytometry*.

isotype switch

Process by which a *B cell* switches from making *antibody* of one *isotype* to another without altering the specificity of the antibody, producing an isotype with the same *variable* (V) *regions* but a different *heavy chain constant* (C) *region*.

J chain

See joining (J) chain.

J gene See *joining* (*J*) *gene*.

JAK/STAT signaling pathway

Mechanism that transmits information from chemical signals outside the cell to gene promoters on the DNA in the cell nucleus. The mechanism is activated by the binding of *Janus-family tyrosine kinase* (*JAK*) to the nonpolypeptide portion of occupied *receptors* for some *interleukins* (*IL*). JAK phosphorylates signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT) proteins apart from STAT 5a and 5b.

Note: JAK2 is activated after it binds occupied receptors for somatotropin, several *cytokines*, and leptin. It then phosphorylates STAT proteins, which dimerize and enter the nucleus to activate transcription of specific genes.

JAM test

Method which uses labeled nucleotide precursors to estimate DNA fragmentation during *cell-mediated cytotoxicity* or *apoptosis*.

Janus-family tyrosine kinase (JAK)

Tyrosine kinase activated by *cytokines* binding to cell *receptors*. See also *JAK/STAT signaling pathway*.

Jerne plaque assay

See antibody-forming cell (AFC) assay.

joining (J) chain

Polypeptide that forms part of the polymeric structure of pentameric *immunoglobulin M (IgM)* and dimeric *immunoglobulin A (IgA)*. After [3]

joining (J) gene

Gene coding for a joining segment that connects variable (V) regions and constant (C) regions of *immunoglobulin* (Ig) or *T*-cell receptor (*TCR*) chains that, upon gene rearrangement, encodes part of the third hypervariable region of the antigen receptors.

Note: In Ig *light chains* and TCR, a *variable (V) gene* segment rearranges to a *joining (J) gene* segment; in Ig *heavy chains* and TCR, a *diversity (D) gene* segment rearranges to a joining (J) gene segment.

See also V(D)J recombination.

Modified from [3,7]

junctional diversity

Diversity of the splice junctions in the recombined variable (V) gene, diversity (D) gene [for *immunoglobulin* (Ig) heavy chains, and for TCR b and d chains], and *joining* (J) gene segments of antibody and *T*-cell receptor (TCR) genes. See also D gene and V gene.

[3]

K cell

See killer cell.

kallikrein

Any of a group of enzymes found in the blood and body fluids that acts on certain *plasma globulins* to produce *bradykinins*.

Kaposi sarcoma (KS)

Form of skin cancer that can involve internal organs. It is most often found in patients with *acquired immunodeficiency syndrome* (AIDS) and can be fatal.

kappa (κ)-light chain

Smaller of the two types of *light chain* found in human *immunoglobulins* (*Ig*), the other type being a *lambda* (λ)-*light chain*. See also *Bence–Jones protein*.

keratinocyte

Epidermal cell that produces keratin.

killer activatory receptor (KAR)

killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor Receptor found on natural killer (NK) cells, and some γ : δ and α : β T cells.

- *Note 1:* KARs recognize *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules* and, like the *C-type lectin* receptors also found in these cells, can either inhibit or activate the *killer cells.* If *immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM)* sequences are present in their cytoplasmic domain they are inhibitory.
- *Note 2: Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIRs)* lacking ITIMs can associate with *immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM)*-containing adaptor molecules in which case they can activate the killer cell.

[26]

killer cell

Cell that displays *cell-mediated cytotoxicity*, including *cytotoxic T lymphocytes* (*CTL*, *Tc*), *natural killer* (*NK*) cells, and *natural killer T* (*NKT*) cells. Some also consider activated *macrophages*, *monocytes*, and *interferon* (*IFN*)-activated *neutrophils* to be killer cells.

killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor (KIR)

killer inhibitory receptor

Receptor expressed on *natural killer (NK) cells* that binds to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I* molecules on *target cells*; binding MHC class I inhibits the signaling that would otherwise lead to target cell killing.

Note: If *immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM)* sequences are present in the KIR cytoplasmic domain, MHC class I molecule binding is inhibitory to the *killer cell*. KIRs lacking ITIMs can associate with *immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM)*-containing adaptor molecules, in which case binding of MHC class I molecules can activate the killer cell.

killer lectin-like receptor (KLR)

Killer cell receptor that binds to *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules* and, like the *C-type lectin* receptors also found on these cells, can either inhibit or activate the killer cells.

killer T cell

See cytotoxic T lymphocyte.

kinin

Any of a family of polypeptides that is released during inflammatory responses and that increases vascular permeability and smooth muscle contraction. After [3]

knockout

Use of homologous genetic recombination in embryonic *stem cells* to replace a functional gene with a defective copy of the gene.

Note: The animals that are produced by this technique can be bred to homozygosity, thus allowing the generation of a null phenotype for that gene product.

[3]

See also knockout mouse.

knockout mouse

Mouse produced from embryonic cells containing DNA that has been genetically engineered so that it does not express a particular gene or group of genes.

Kupffer cell

Fixed tissue *macrophage* found lining the blood sinuses in the liver. After [3] See also *macrophage*, *resident(ial)*.

Kviem reaction

Test for *sarcoidosis*, eliciting a *granuloma* at the site of intradermal injection of a *lymph node* extract from a person with active disease. Generally considered non-specific.

L-selectin

Any of a group of *leukocyte* surface *adhesion molecules*; they are classed as CD62 in the *cluster of differentiation (CD) antigen* marker system. All have *lectin* family carbohydrate binding domains and epidermal growth factor (EGF) repeats.

Note: L-selectins are expressed on the surface of *platelets* and endothelial cells as well as leukocytes.

[26]

Ly-6

Family of multi-gene-encoded, small, generally glycosylphosphatidyl inositol-anchored membrane proteins thought to be involved in cell adhesion and signaling, and in *antigen*-independent *activation* of *lymphocytes*.

See also protectin (CD59).

Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome (LEMS)

Paraneoplastic (see *paraneoplastic autoimmune syndrome*) neurological disorder associated with smallcell lung cancer and caused by *autoantibodies* against voltage-gated calcium channels. [1]

lamda (λ)-light chain

One of the two types of *light chain* of human *immunoglobulins* (*Ig*), the other type being the *kappa* (κ)-*light chain*.

Langerhans cell

Immature, phagocytic *dendritic cell* of the mammalian skin, characterized by the presence of *Fc receptors, major histocompatibility (MHC) class II molecules*, and epidermal dendritic cell marker *CD1*. It contains a cytoplasmic organelle called the Birbeck granule.

large granular lymphocyte (LGL)

Lymphocyte of greater than normal size that contains cytoplasmic granules and functions as a *natural killer* (*NK*) *cell* or *killer* (*K*) *cell*. Activated *CD8*+ *cytotoxic T lymphocytes* (*CTL*, *Tc*) also assume an LGL morphology. After [3]

late phase reaction

Immunoglobulin E (IgE)-mediated immune response occurring 5 to 8 h after exposure to antigen, after the "wheal and flare" reaction of immediate hypersensitivity has diminished, with inflammation peaking around 24 h, and then subsiding.

latex agglutination test latex fixation test

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Use of latex beads coated with antibodies to detect antigen in biological samples.

latex allergen

Allergen found in natural rubber latex (NRL).

Note: Major NRL-specific allergens are Hev b 1, Hev b 3, Hev b 5, and Hev b 6.02. These four major allergens account for the allergenic potential of NRL products like gloves, condoms, teats, balloons, etc.

lectin

Member of a family of proteins that binds specific sugars on glycoproteins and glycolipids. Some plant lectins are *mitogenic* [e.g., *phytohemagglutinin* (*PHA*), *concanavalin A* (*ConA*)]. [3]

leukemia

Progressive, malignant disease of the blood-forming organs, characterized by excessive proliferation and development of *leucocytes* and their precursors in the *bone marrow* and blood. [5]

leukocyte

White blood cell.

Note: There are different types of leukocytes including *neutrophils*, *basophils*, *eosinophils*, *lymphocytes*, and *monocytes*.

After [3]

leukocyte common antigen (LCA)

Antigen common to both *T* lymphocytes and *B* lymphocytes.

leukocyte functional antigen (LFA)

Any of a group of cell-surface antigens involved in intercellular adhesion.

leukocytopenia

Amount of *leukocytes* below normal values that is a characteristic feature of *systemic autoimmune dis*eases [e.g., Felty syndrome, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *Sjögren syndrome, mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)*].

After [1]

leukocytosis

Abnormal increase in the number of *leukocytes*. [1]

leukopenia See *leukocytopenia*.

leukotriene

Metabolic product of arachidonic acid that promotes inflammatory processes (e.g., *chemotaxis*, increased vascular permeability) and is produced by a variety of cell types including *mast cells*, *basophils*, and *macrophages*.

[3]

ligand

Ion, molecule, or molecular group that binds to another chemical entity to form a larger complex. [5]

Note: A ligand may bind specifically to a *receptor* and trigger a response such as activation of a *signal transduction* pathway.

ligand of inducible co-stimulatory protein (ICOSL, LICOS)

Protein involved, after binding to *inducible co-stimulatory protein (ICOS)*, in several harmful *immune responses*, such as *autoimmunity, allergy*, or *graft-versus-host (GVH) reaction*.

Note: Prolonged ICOS and ICOSL expression at chronic inflammatory sites seems to give rise to pathology.

light chain

Small polypeptide subunit of an antibody or immunoglobulin (Ig).

Note: A typical antibody is composed of two immunoglobulin (Ig) *heavy chains* and two Ig light chains.

Limulus test

Method of detecting bacterial *endotoxins* based on gelation of a blod cell lysate from the horseshoe crab, <u>Limulus polyphemus</u>.

See also pyogen test.

linear epitope

continuous epitope

Antigenic determinant that is contiguous in the amino acid sequence of a protein and therefore does not require the protein to be folded into its native conformation for *antibody* to bind.

Note: The *epitopes* detected by *T cells* are continuous.

After [2]

linked recognition

Requirement for a *helper T lymphocyte (Th)* and *B lymphocyte* to interact with separate but physically linked *epitopes* in the same *antigen*, in order for an *immune response* to a *thymus-dependent (TD) antigen*.

lipid raft

Cholesterol- and glycosphingolipid-rich membrane subdomain in which molecules involved in cellular *activation* become concentrated.
[3]

© 2012, IUPAC

See also caveola.

lipopolysaccharide (LPS)

Endotoxin derived from Gram-negative bacterial cell walls, which has inflammatory and mitogenic actions.

[3]

live attenuated vaccine

Vaccine prepared from living attenuated organisms or from viruses that have been attenuated but can still replicate in the cells of the *host* organism.

Note: The live attenuated vaccine contains a version of living bacteria or viruses that have been weakened (attenuated) so they can no longer cause disease. Since they are very close to the actual infection, they can cause strong cell and *antibody* responses.

See also attenuated vaccine.

liver-kidney microsomal (LKM) antibodies

Autoantibodies directed against cytochrome P450 and uridine diphosphate (UDP)-glucuronosyltransferase (UGT) *antigens* typically found in patients with immune-mediated hepatitis.

Note: These include LKM-1 *antibodies* (cytochrome P4502D6) in patients with *autoimmune* hepatitis type 2 (AIH-2) and *autoimmunity* associated with hepatitis C; LKM-2 (cytochrome P4502C9) in patients with drug-induced hepatitis caused by tienilic acid; and LKM-3 (UGT-1) in patients with chronic hepatitis D and AIH-2.

[1]

local lymph node assay (LLNA)

See murine local lymph node assay (LLNA).

lupus

See systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE).

lupus anticoagulant

See anticoagulant, lupus.

lupus erythematosus See systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE).

See systemic upus crymematosus (

lupus-like syndrome

See *drug-induced lupus*.

lymph

Clear fluid that bathes the tissues of the body, carrying bacteria to *lymph nodes* and ultimately to the blood stream.

Note 1: Lymph can also transport metastatic cancer cells.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Note 2: Lymph plays a role in maintaining body fluid balance. See also *lymphatic (system)*.

lymphadenopathy

Enlarged *lymph nodes*. [3]

lymphangion

Morphological or functional unit of lymphatic vessels consisting of the region between adjacent lymphatic valves.

lymphatic (system)

Describing vessels whose special function is the collection of *lymph* and its ultimate conveyance to the blood circulation and thoracic duct.

lymphatic tissue

Tissue involved in the collection, production, and handling of *lymph*, including the lymphatic vessels and *lymph nodes*.

lymph node

lymph gland

Any of the small rounded gland-like structures of the *lymphatic system*, which occur along the lymphatic vessels and which are responsible for removing bacteria, viruses, and foreign molecules from the *lymph* stream and for producing *lymphocytes* and *antibodies*.

lymphoblast (n), /ic (adj)

Abnormal cell with a large nucleus and scanty cytoplasm, thought to be the precursor of the *lymphocyte*, found in blood and blood-forming organs in patients with lymphoblastic *leukemia*.

lymphocyte

Small *leucocyte* found in the blood, *lymph*, and *lymphoid tissues* that has a single round nucleus and little or no granulation in the cytoplasm.

- *Note 1*: Lymphocytes may be either *B cells*, which produce *humoral immunity*, or *T cells*, which produce *cell-mediated immunity* (*CMI*).
- *Note 2*: Lymphocytes constitute about a quarter of the total leucocytes in the blood stream but occur in large numbers in the *lymph nodes* and other *lymphatic tissue*.

lymphocyte-activated killer cell

See lymphokine-activated killer (LAK) cell.

lymphocyte-activating factor Interleukin-1 (IL-1) See *interleukin (IL)*.

lymphocyte activation

Sum of the biochemical processes necessary to stimulate a resting *lymphocyte* to become an immune effector cell, requiring *antigen* and co-stimulatory molecules.

lymphocyte blastogenesis assay (LBA)

See lymphocyte transformation test (LTT).

lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1 (LFA-1)

Adhesion molecule found on lymphocytes, macrophages, and neutrophils, involved in adhesion of lymphocytes to antigen-presenting cells (APCs).

lymphocyte homing

Process that directs *lymphocyte* subsets to specialized microenvironments that control their differentiation, regulate their survival, and target immune effector cells to sites of *antigenic* or microbial invasion. See also *homing*, *homing* receptor.

lymphocyte homing receptor

Cell surface glycoprotein on *lymphocytes* and other *leukocytes* that mediates adhesion to specialized blood vessels, the *high endothelial venules*.

Note: Several different classes of lymphocyte homing receptors have been identified, and they appear to bind to different surface molecules (*addressins*) on high endothelial venules in different tissues.

lymphocyte proliferation test (LPT)

Test of immune *sensitization* in which white blood cells are exposed in vitro to an *antigen* and multiply if already sensitized to that antigen.

See also *lymphocyte transformation test (LTT)*.

lymphocyte repertoire, immunoglobulin or T-cell receptor

Profile of immunoglobulins (Ig) or T-cell receptors (TCRs) available within a specified group of cells.

Note: Each profile is characterized by the *antigen* specificities of the immunoglobulins or TCRs present.

lymphocyte subpopulation

Population forming part of the whole population of *lymphocytes*, usually characterized by sensitivity to a given *antigen*.

lymphocyte transformation test (LTT)

lymphocyte blastogenesis assay (LBA)

Test for increased DNA synthesis followed by cell division and differentiation of *lymphocytes* in response to *antigens* or *mitogens*; an in vitro test of lymphocyte function. See also *lymphocyte proliferation test*.

lymphocytopenia

Deficiency of *lymphocytes* in the blood compared with normal values.

Note: This is a characteristic feature of systemic autoimmune diseases [e.g., *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Sjögren syndrome, mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)*].

After [1]

lymphocytosis

Condition characterized by an abnormal increase in the number of *lymphocytes* in blood, usually a result of infection or inflammation.

lymphocytotoxicity

Capability of lysing *lymphocytes*.

Note: Lymphocytes having a specific cell surface *antigen* are lysed when incubated with *antiserum* and *complement* or when attacked by *primed histoincompatible T lymphocytes*.

lymphoid follicle

Region of clustered *B cells*, allowing the selection of *antigen*-binding B cells by *dendritic cells* during *adaptive immune responses*.

lymphoid stem cell

Stem cell giving rise to the lineage of lymphocytes.

lymphoid tissue

Vertebrate tissue that is made up predominantly of *lymphocytes*, e.g., *lymph*, *lymph nodes*, *spleen*, *thymus*, *Peyer's patches*, adenoids, pharyngeal *tonsils*, and, in birds, *bursa of Fabricius* and cecal tonsils. [26]

lymphokine

Cytokine produced by *lymphocytes*. [3]

lymphokine-activated killer (LAK) cell

lymphocyte-activated killer cell

Killer (K) cell or *natural killer (NK) cell* activated in vitro by *interleukin (IL)-2* to give enhanced killing of *target cells*.

[3]

lymphoma

Neoplasm, usually malignant, of the lymphatic tissues.

lymphopenia See *lymphocytopenia*.

lymphopoiesis

Production of *lymphocytes*.

lymphoproliferation

Proliferation of *lymphocytes* in response to stimulation with cellular activators, including *antigens* or *mitogens*.

lymphosum

Sum of B cells + T cells + natural killer (NK) cells determined separately (by flow cytometry), compared to the total number of lymphocytes.

Note: Used as a check on accuracy in counting the proportion of cell types, e.g., a value of (100 ± 10) % being acceptable and reflecting the uncertainty of the method.

lymphotoxin (LT)

Tumor necrosis factor β (TNF- β).

T-cell-derived *cytokine* that is *cytotoxic* for certain tumor cells and also has immunoregulatory functions.

[3]

lysosome

Cytoplasmic granule containing hydrolytic enzymes involved in the digestion of phagocytosed (see *phagocytosis*) material.

After [3]

M cell

See microfold cell.

macroautophagy

non-specific autophagy

Sequestration and breakdown of organelles and long-lived proteins in a double-membrane vesicle, called an autophagosome or autophagic vacuole, inside the cell.

- *Note 1*: The outer membrane of the autophagosome fuses in the cytoplasm with a *lysosome* to form an autolysosome or auto*phagolysosome* where their contents are degraded by acidic lysosomal hydrolases.
- *Note 2*: Macroautophagy is the major inducible pathway for the general turnover of cytoplasmic constituents in eukaryotic cells. It is also responsible for the degradation of active cytoplasmic enzymes and organelles during nutrient starvation.

See also *autophagy*.

macrophage

Large (10–20 µm diameter) ameboid and phagocytic cell (see *phagocyte*) found in many tissues, especially in areas of *inflammation*, derived from blood *monocytes* and playing an important role in *host defense* mechanisms.

[5]

Note: Two main functions are recognized: *phagocytosis* and *antigen presentation*.

macrophage, resident(ial)

macrophage, fixed

Macrophage stationed at a point where microbial invasion or accumulation of dust is likely to occur.

Note:	Each type of macrophage, determined by its location, has a specific name:	
	Name of cell	Location
	dust cells/alveolar macrophages	pulmonary alveolus of lungs
	histiocytes	connective tissue
	Kupffer cells	liver
	microglial cells	neural tissue
	monocytes	blood
	osteoclasts	bone
	sinusoidal lining cells	spleen

macrophage function test

Any assay suitable to characterize the effect of substances on macrophage function in vivo or in vitro.

Note: Common macrophage function tests are the *chromium release assay* and the *chromate uptake assay*.

macrophage mannose receptor (MMR)

Receptor involved in pathogen recognition, in clearance of endogenous serum glycoproteins, and in *antigen presentation*.

- *Note 1*: Clusters of lectin domains bind mannose residues on microbial and fungal surfaces in a Ca²⁺-dependent manner.
- Note 2: The receptor activates the C3 component of complement.

macropinocytosis

"High-volume" *pinocytosis* by which *dendritic cells* engulf relatively large volumes of fluid from their surroundings, enabling them to take in many *antigens* nonspecifically.

major basic protein

Small basic arginine-rich peptide (pI 10.9, molecular mass of 13.8 kDa) in the granules of *eosinophils* that kills helminths and protozoa.

[4]

major histocompatibility complex (MHC)

Cluster of genes encoding cell surface molecules involved in *antigen presentation* to *T cells*. In humans, they are found on chromosome 6 and in mice on chromosome 17. They are polymorphic and code for *antigens* that lead to rapid *graft rejection* between members of a single species that differ at these loci.

Note: Several classes of protein such as *MHC class I* and *II molecules* are gene products encoded in this region. The MHC-encoded molecules are also known as *human leuko-cyte antigens (HLA)*.

See also *H*-2, *H*-2 complex.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecule

Surface protein encoded by the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* expressed on all nucleated cells, presenting antigen-derived peptides. See also *antigen presentation*. After [1]

major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecule

Surface protein encoded by the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* expressed on *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)*, presenting antigen-derived peptides. See also *antigen presentation*. After [1]

major histocompatibility complex $\left(\text{MHC}\right)$ class III molecule

Antigen encoded by the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) including several complement factors, tumor necrosis factor (TNF) α , and lymphotoxin.

Note: The genes are found on the short arm of chromosome 6 between class I and class II genes, and although the gene products share no common function with the *major histo-compatibility complex (MHC) class I* and *MHC class II molecules*, they are often discussed together.

major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule

Any of the cell-surface glycoprotein *alloantigens* encoded by the *major histocompatibility complex* (*MHC*) that are involved in the regulation of *immune responses* and can cause the *rejection* of *grafted* tissues, cells, and tumors bearing them.

major histocompatibility complex (MHC) restriction

Necessity that *T cells* recognize processed *antigen* only when presented by *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules* of the original *haplotype* associated with T-cell *priming*. [3]

Mancini immunodiffusion

See radial immunodiffusion.

mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR)

Intracellular signaling molecule (phosphoinositide-3-kinase) involved in control of cell growth, whose activity is negatively influenced by the *immunosuppressive* drug rapamycin (Annex II).

mannan-binding lectin-associated serine peptidase-1 and -2 (MASP1, MASP2)

mannose-binding protein-associated serine protease (MASP)

Complement-dependent bactericidal factors that bind to the Ra and R2 polysaccharides expressed by certain enterobacterium strains, such as Ra *chemotype* strains of <u>Salmonella</u>.

Note 1: Alternate splicing of the genes results in multiple transcript variants encoding two Ra-reactive factors (RARF) that are involved in the *mannose-binding lectin (MBL)* pathway of complement activation.

Note 2: They are serine proteases that share about 40 % sequence identity with complement components C1r and C1s.

mannose-binding lectin (MBL)

mannan-binding lectin See *mannose-binding protein*.

mannose-binding protein (MBP)

```
mannose-binding lectin (MBL)
```

Member of the collectin family of calcium-dependent lectins, and an acute-phase protein.

Note: This lectin functions as a stimulator of the *classical pathway of complement activation*, and as an *opsonin* for *phagocytosis* by binding to mannose, a sugar residue usually found in an exposed form only on the surface of microorganisms.

[3]

mantle zone

mantle

corona

Outer ring of small *lymphocytes* surrounding the center of a lymphatic nodule (*lymphoid follicle*). It contains transient lymphocytes and is the location of the *lymphoma* in mantle cell lymphoma.

Mantoux test

See tuberculin.

marginal zone

Outer area of the *splenic* periarteriolar lymphoid sheath (PALS) that is rich in *B cells*, particularly those responding to *thymus*-independent *antigens*.

[3]

margination

Leukocyte adhesion to the endothelium of blood vessels in the early phase of an acute *inflammatory response*.

[3]

mast cell

Large connective tissue cell that contains inflammatory substances such as *histamine*, proteases (including tryptases, chymases, and carboxypeptidase A), heparin and chondroitin sulfate proteoglycans, and eicosanoid lipid mediators (the precursors of *leukotrienes* and *prostaglandins*). These substances are released in *allergic* reactions or in response to injury or *inflammation*.

Note: Mast cells are bound within tissues that interface with the external world such as the skin, respiratory or intestinal tract, as well as in other areas such as heart, synovium, and uterus. Mast cells do not circulate. The mast cell has binding sites on its surface for *immunoglobulin E (IgE)*.

mast cell activation disorder (syndrome) (MCAD/MCAS)

Disorder or syndrome in which there is evidence of *systemic*, inappropriate release of *mast cell* mediators.

Note: While people with MCAD/MCAS have a normal or near-normal tryptase level and a *bone marrow* biopsy that contains a normal number of mast cells, they experience most of the same symptoms as someone with *mastocytosis*.

mast cell degranulation

See degranulation.

mast cell stabilizer

Non-steroidal medication that reduces the release of substances from *mast cells*, e.g., sodium cromoglycate.

mastocyte

See mast cell.

mastocytoma

mast cell tumor

Nodule of mast cells that can involve the skin, subcutaneous tissue, and sometimes muscle.

Note: Mastocytomas are rare and are mostly seen in infants within the first three months of life.

mastocytosis

Rare disease characterized by the presence of too many *mast cells* in various organs and tissues. The condition can be a chronic, long-term illness or it can develop suddenly.

Note: Mastocytosis may be *systemic*, involving a variety of organs, or cutaneous, involving only the skin, also referred to as urticaria pigmentosa.

maturation (in immunology)

Process by which *B cells* produce *antibodies* with increased *affinity* for *antigen* during the course of an *immune response*.

mature B cell

B cell with immunoglobulin M (IgM) and immunoglobulin D (IgD) on its surface.

medulla

Inner (central) region of an organ. [3]

megakaryocyte
Bone marrow precursor of platelets.
[3]

membrane attack complex (MAC)

Complex of *complement* components C5b–C9 that inserts as a pore into the membrane of *target cells* leading to cell lysis.

[3]

memory (in immunology)

immunological memory

Characteristic of the acquired *immune response* (see *acquired immunity*) of *lymphocytes* whereby a second encounter with a given *antigen* produces a secondary immune response that is faster, greater, and longer lasting than the *primary immune response*.

[3]

memory cell

Clonally expanded *T cell* or *B cell* produced during a *primary immune response* and which is *primed* to mediate a *secondary immune response* to the original *antigen*. [3]

memory lymphocyte immunostimulation assay (MELISA)

Patented modification of the lymphocyte transformation test (LTT) based on the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) principle.

mesenteric lymph node

Lymph node lying between layers of the mesentery.

metabolic activation

Formation of one or more chemically reactive intermediate(s) as a result of modification of a molecule by the *xenobiotic*-metabolizing enzymes of liver and other organs.

- *Note 1*: This may lead to acute cell damage and recognition of the damaged cell by the *immune system* as *non-self*.
- Note 2: The reactive intermediate can also act as a hapten.

microautophagy

Process in which *lysosomes* directly engulf cytoplasm by invagination, protrusion, and/or septation of the lysosomal limiting membrane. See also *autophagy*.

microfold cell

M cell

Cell found in the follicle-associated epithelium of the *Peyer's patch* that has the unique ability to sample *antigen* from the lumen of the small intestine and deliver it via *transcytosis* to *antigen-presenting cells (APCs)* and *lymphocytes* located in a unique pocket-like structure on their basolateral side.

microglobulin

Any small globular protein found on the surface of many cells, including *lymphocytes*, and in the blood *plasma* distinct from albumin.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

microscopic polyangiitis (MPA)

ANCA-associated necrotizing, *pauci-immune vasculitis* of the small vessels (capillaries, venules, arterioles) frequently associated with rapidly progressive *glomerulonephritis* and/or hemorrhagic *alveolitis* as well as *autoantibodies* against *myeloperoxidase*.

[1]

migration (of cells)

Movement of cells from one part of the developing embryo or the body to another part.

Note: Cells often migrate in response to, and towards or away from, specific external signals, a process called *chemotaxis*.

minor histocompatibility antigen

Non-*major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*-encoded cell surface processed peptide which, in association with MHC-encoded molecules, contributes to *graft rejection*, albeit not usually as severe as that due to MHC mismatch.

[3]

mitogen (n), /ic (adj)

Substance that induces *lymphocyte* transformation or, more generally, mitosis and cell proliferation. [5]

Note: Mitogens most commonly employed in *immunotoxicology* assays include the *T-cell* mitogens *concanavalin A (ConA)* and *phytohemagglutinin (PHA)*. Mitogens routinely used for assessing *B-cell* proliferation include *pokeweed mitogen (PWM)*, which can also act on T cells, and Escherichia coil *lipopolysaccharide (LPS)*.

mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK)

Member of a kinase network in which "upstream" kinases activate "downstream" kinases that, in response to phosphorylation, translocate to the nucleus and activate transcription factors.

Note: These include the extracellular regulated kinases (Erk), stress-activated protein kinase (SAPK or p38), and the kinase of the c-jun oncoprotein (JNK).

mitophagy

Autophagy-related pathway specific for mitochondria; it can be subdivided into macromitophagy and micromitophagy depending upon the degree of mitophagy.

mixed lymphocyte response/reaction (MLR)

T-cell-proliferative response induced by cells expressing *allogeneic major histocompatibility complex* (*MHC*) *molecules*.

[3]

mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)

Sharp's syndrome

Human *autoimmune disease* in which the *immune system* attacks the body, producing symptoms that combine features of polymyositis, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, and *systemic scleroderma*, and thus being considered as an overlap syndrome.

- *Note 1:* MCTD commonly causes joint pain/swelling, *Raynaud phenomenon*, muscle *inflammation*, and scarring of the skin of the hand. It does not typically cause kidney disease or seizures.
- *Note 2*: Distinguishing laboratory characteristics are a positive, speckled *anti-nuclear antibody* (*ANA*) and an anti-U1-RNP antibody.

molecular mimicry (in immunology)

Concept that identity or similarity of *epitopes* expressed by a pathogen and by a self molecule may lead to production of *antibodies* reacting to the *self-antigen*.

Note: This may explain how some *autoimmune diseases* develop.

monoclonal antibody

Antibody derived from a single *B cell clone* and therefore bearing identical *antigen*-binding sites and *isotype* to other members of the clone.

After [3]

monocyte

Mononuclear *phagocyte* found in blood and which is the precursor of the tissue *macrophage*. [3]

- *Note 1*: Formed in the *bone marrow* from the promonocyte, monocytes are transported to tissues, as of the lung and liver, where they develop into macrophages.
- Note 2: Formerly called large mononuclear leukocyte and hyaline or transitional leukocyte.

monokine

Alternative name for a cytokine produced by monocytes.

mononuclear phagocyte system (MPS)

reticuloendothelial system (RES) Network of phagocytic cells (see *phagocyte*) throughout the body. System comprising blood *monocytes* and tissue *macrophages*. After [3]

mouse IgE test (MIGET)

Procedure in which serum *immunoglobulin* E(IgE) levels are measured in mice following topical exposure to a test substance. Substances that cause a significant increase in IgE are considered to be potential respiratory *allergens*.

mouse ear-swelling test (MEST)

Test for sensitization in which the test substance is applied topically to the ear of a mouse for three consecutive days. The change in ear thickness is then measured following *challenge* on day 8.

mucocutaneous

Pertaining to or affecting the mucous membranes and/or the skin.

© 2012, IUPAC

mucosa

Moist tissue that lines some organs and body cavities, including the nose, mouth, lungs, and digestive tract.

mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT)

Secondary lymphoid tissue present in the surface mucosa of the respiratory tract and bronchus (BALT), gastrointestinal tract (GALT), nasal passages (NALT), larynx (LALT), conjunctiva (CALT), and genitourinary tract, and in the skin sub-epidermis (SALT).

Note: MALT plays an important part in limiting entry of pathogens through the mucosal surfaces.

mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1 (MAdCAM-1)

Protein involved in trafficking of lymphocytes to mucosal endothelium.

Note: Expression of MAdCAM-1 is induced in the murine endothelial cell line bEnd.3 by *tumor necrosis factor* α (*TNF-* α), *interleukin* (*IL*)-1, and bacterial *lipopolysaccharide* (*LPS*).

mucosal tolerance

State of *lymphocyte* hyporesponsiveness to protein *antigens* applied across *mucosal* surfaces by oral or nasal instillation.

multiple chemical sensitivity (MCS)

idiopathic environmental intolerance

Intolerance condition attributed to extreme sensitivity to various environmental chemicals, found in air, food, water, building materials, or fabrics.

- *Note 1*: This syndrome is characterized by the patient's belief that his or her symptoms are caused by very low-level exposure to environmental chemicals. The term "chemical" is used to refer broadly to many natural and man-made substances, some of which have several chemical constituents.
- *Note 2*: Several theories have been advanced to explain the cause of multiple chemical sensitivity, including *allergy*, toxic effects, and neurobiological sensitization. There is insufficient scientific evidence to confirm a relationship between any of these possible causes and symptoms.

[5]

multiple myeloma

Plasma cell malignancy resulting in high levels of monoclonal *immunoglobulin (Ig)* in *serum* and of free *light chains (Bence–Jones protein)* in urine.

[3] See also *myeloma*.

multiple sclerosis

Disease of the central nervous system, believed to be *autoimmune*, in which an *inflammatory response* results in demyelination of neurons and loss of neurological function.

multiplex immunoassay

Type of particle *immunoassay* employing sets of microspheres with various physicochemical features, each labeled with a different *antibody*. The method allows detection in a single measurement of an array of 100 or more proteins.

See also particle immunoassay.

multipotent progenitor cell

Undifferentiated *stem cell*, obtained from adult *bone marrow* or other non-embryonic tissue sources, that possesses the ability to differentiate into a variety of cell types, especially into cells of a closely related family of cells that are expanded in vitro and deposited in master cell banks for "off-the-shelf" use, with potential *hematopoiesis*-inducing and immunomodulating activities.

- *Note 1: Allogeneic* multipotent adult progenitor cells (MAPCs) are non-immunogenic due to the lack of *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* expression, and so elicit no *immune response* upon administration.
- *Note* 2: In vivo, bone marrow-derived adult stem cells are capable of maturing into a broad range of cell types and may help to restore the *immune system* by producing multiple therapeutic molecules in response to *inflammation* and tissue damage.

murine local lymph node assay (LLNA)

Predictive test of sensitization in which a test substance is applied topically to the skin of mice (usually three times at daily intervals) and the weight of the local *draining lymph nodes* is measured at six days. Usually *lymphoproliferation* in the nodes is measured following injection of [³H]thymidine or bromodeoxyuridine.

mutation (in immunology) See *somatic hypermutation*.

myasthenia gravis, acquired

Autoimmune disease characterized by muscle weakness usually affecting ocular and oropharyngeal muscles due to an *autoimmune* attack against components of the neuromuscular junction (e.g., the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor).

Note: This disease may be *idiopathic*, paraneoplastic [*thymic* tumor or lung (*Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome*) tumor, etc.], or drug-induced (e.g., D-penicillamine).

After [1]

myelodysplastic syndrome

preleukemia (obsolete)

Diverse collection of hematological conditions united by ineffective production (or dysplasia) of *myeloid* blood cells and risk of transformation to *acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)*. *Anemia* requiring chronic blood *transfusion* is frequently present.

myeloma

Tumor composed of cells derived from hematopoietic cells (see *hematopoiesis*) of the *bone marrow*, or from *mast cells*.

See also Bence–Jones protein, multiple myeloma.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

myeloid

myelogenous

Referring to the nonlymphocytic groups of white blood cells, including *granulocytes*, *monocytes*, and *platelets*.

Note: Acute myelogenous leukemia (AML) is also known as acute myeloid leukemia.

myeloid stem cell

One of two groups of *stem cells* produced in the *bone marrow*. Myeloid stem cells may mature into several types of blood cells, including acidic *basophils*, *eosinophils*, *erythrocytes*, *macrophages*, *megakary-ocytes*, and *neutrophils*.

myeloid tissue

Tissue within red *bone marrow* that produces the blood cells. It is found around the blood vessels and contains various cell types that are precursors of the blood cells.

myeloma protein

Monoclonal antibody secreted by *myeloma* cells. [3]

myeloperoxidase (MPO)

Enzyme found in azurophilic granules of *neutrophils*, the major target of *antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)*.

- *Note 1:* MPO *autoantibodies* are diagnostic markers for microscopic polyangiitis, rapidly progressive *glomerulonephritis*, and *Goodpasture disease* or *syndrome*.
- *Note 2*: MPO autoantibodies are also found in patients exposed to silica or drugs (e.g., hydralazine, propylthiouracil, D-penicillamine) as well as in some patients with *Wegener granulomatosis (WG)* and other *autoimmune diseases*.

After [1]

myelopoiesis

Process of formation and development of myeloid blood cells in the bone marrow.

myelosuppression

Decrease in *myeloid* cells, including *pancytopenia*, *anemia*, *leukopenia*, *lymphopenia*, *thromocytopenia*, and other *blood dyscrasias*.

myositis, autoimmune

Rare *systemic* inflammatory myopathy, including primary polymyositis, primary dermatomyositis, myositis associated with malignancy, childhood dermatomyositis, and myositis with multisystem *autoimmune disease* [e.g., *mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)*, *systemic sclerosis (SSc)*].

Note: Autoantibodies against aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases (e.g., anti-Jo-1), signal recognition particles (e.g., anti-SRP54), nuclear helicase (anti-Mi-2), tRNA and tRNA-protein complexes (e.g., anti-Mas), and translation factor (anti-KJ) have been described as myositis-specific.

NACHT domain-, leucine-rich repeat (LRR)-, and pyrin (N-terminal homology) domain (PYD)containing protein 3 (NALP3, NLRP3)

cryopyrin

NOD-like receptor (NLR), found in certain *inflammasomes*, that binds to aggregated proteins and the peptides that compose them. Its activation leads to the generation of inflammatory *cytokines*, such as *interleukin (IL)-1*, and neurotoxic factors.

Note: Mutations in NALP3 are responsible for the autoinflammatory diseases familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome, Muckle–Wells syndrome and neonatal onset multisystem inflammatory disease.

NADPH oxidase

See respiratory burst.

NK cell

See natural killer (NK) cell.

NKT cell

See natural killer T (NKT) cell.

N-nucleotides

Non-templated nucleotides added to the junctions between *antibody* and *T-cell receptor (TCR) variable (V) gene, diversity (D) gene, and joining (J) gene* segments during gene rearrangement. [3]

NOD-like receptor (NLR)

Any of a large family of cytoplasmic proteins containing a nucleotide-binding domain and *leucine-rich repeats* (*LRRs*), involved in regulation of *inflammation* and *apoptosis*; many family members are thought to function as *pattern recognition receptors* (*PRRs*).

N-region

Highly variable region on the H-chain of immunoglobulins.

naïve lymphocyte

Mature *T cell* or *B cell* that has not yet been activated (see *lymphocyte activation*) by encounter with *antigen*.

[3]

nasal-associated lymphoid tissue (NALT)

See mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT).

natural autoantibodies (NAA)

Part of the naturally occurring repertoire of polyreactive *antibodies* that bind to *autoantigens* with low *affinity*. They are mainly of *immunoglobulin* M(IgM) *isotype* and produced by CD5+B *lymphocytes*.

- Note 1: Natural antibodies and their producing cells may have a physiological role in the following processes: (i) first line of protection against external invaders, (ii) elimination of degraded autoantigens and senescent cells, and (iii) tolerization (see *tolerance*) of *T* cells by presenting autoantigens, thereby in protecting from development of pathological autoimmunity.
- *Note 2*: In contrast, natural autoantibodies may become pathogenic in clonal B cell disorders, e.g., *monoclonal* anti-I *antibodies* in cold agglutinin disease cause *autoimmune hemolytic anemia*.

After [1]

natural immunity

Host defense mechanisms that do not require prior exposure to antigen.

Note: Nonimmunological defense may involve the actions of *macrophages* and *natural killer* (*NK*) *cells*, mucocutaneous or integumental barriers, the action of cilia or microvilli, or physiological processes, e.g., urinary outflow, vascular perfusion of tissues, or the presence of native flora, which "outcompete" pathogens.

natural killer (NK) cell

Large granular *lymphocyte* which does not rearrange nor express either *immunoglobulin* or *T-cell receptor* (*TCR*) genes but is able to recognize and destroy certain tumor and virally infected cells in a *major histocompatibility complex* (*MHC*) *molecule-* and *antibody-*independent manner. [3]

natural killer cell activity assay

Immunotoxicity test in which *lymphoid tissue* or blood that has been treated with a test compound is co-incubated with target cells. The cytotoxic effect on target cells is measured, e.g., with the *chromium release assay*. It is used under circumstances where differences from untreated cells are attributed to *natural killer (NK) cell* activity.

natural killer T (NKT) cell

Lymphoid cells with a morphology and granule content intermediate between *T cells* and *natural killer* (*NK*) *cells*.

Note: NKT cells express low levels of α : β *T-cell receptor* with an invariant α chain and very restricted β chain specificity, recognize lipid and glycolipid *antigens* presented by the nonclassical *MHC*-like molecule CD1d, and are potent producers of *interleukin (IL)*-4 and *IFN-\gamma*.

After [3]

natural regulatory T cell

See regulatory T cell (Treg).

natural resistance-associated macrophage protein (NRAMP-1)

Iron transporter that plays a critical role in *macrophage activation* and differentiation.

Note: Allele 3 of the NRAMP-1 promoter is associated with *autoimmune* disorders [e.g., *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, *diabetes mellitus type 1*, *multiple sclerosis*].

After [1]

necro/sis (n), /tic (adj)

Sum of morphological changes resulting from cell death by lysis and/or enzymatic degradation, usually accompanied by *inflammation* and affecting groups of cells in a tissue.

Note: Distinct from *apoptosis*, *autophagy*, and other modes of programmed cell death. After [5]

negative selection

Deletion by *apoptosis* in the *thymus* of *T* cells that recognize self-peptides presented by self-*major his*tocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules, thus preventing the development of *autoimmune* T cells. Negative selection of developing *B* cells is also thought to occur if they encounter high levels of selfantigen in the bone marrow.

[3]

neoantigen

Antigen newly expressed on a tumor or virally infected cell, or arising after macromolecule-hapten binding.

neonat/e (n), /al (adj)

Infant during the first four weeks of postnatal life.

Note: For statistical purposes, some scientists have defined the period as the first seven days of postnatal life. The precise definition varies from species to species.

After [5]

neonatal tolerance

Tolerance to specific foreign *antigens* induced by the exposure of a bird or mammal to the foreign antigens during embryonic or *neonatal* life, depending upon species.

nephritis, autoimmune

Inflammation of the kidney due to immunological reaction to renal antigens.

Note: Common examples are anti-glomerular basement membrane disease (*Goodpasture disease* or *syndrome*), *autoimmune* tubulointerstitial *nephritis* with antibody to tubular basement membrane, or occurring as part of *systemic autoimmune diseases* independent of renal *autoantigens* [*lupus* nephritis in *systemic lupus erythematosus* (*SLE*), interstitial nephritis in *Sjögren syndrome*, nephritis in *ANCA-associated vasculitis*, *cryo-globulinemic vasculitis*, or hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis syndrome].

After [1]

nettle rash

See hives.

© 2012, IUPAC
neuropathy, autoimmune

Autoimmune disease of the nervous system.

- *Note 1*: More and more neuropathies are described as autoimmune or possibly autoimmune in nature. Little is known about *xenobiotics* in the pathogenesis, but infections may play an important role in the initiation of some diseases.
- *Note 2*: Autoimmune neuropathies may be manifested at the neuromuscular junction, as central nervous system diseases (e.g., *multiple sclerosis, paraneoplastic autoimmune syndromes*, stiff-person syndrome, as well as manifestations of *systemic* autoimmune diseases), and diseases of the peripheral nerves (e.g., various forms of acute and chronic demyelinating neuropathies).

After [1]

neutralization (in immunology)

Blocking by an antibody of the effects of a virus.

neutropenia

Abnormally low concentration of *neutrophils* in the blood.

Note: Neutropenia is associated with an increased risk of infection.

neutrophil

polymorphonuclear leucocyte

Granular *leukocyte*, the major circulating phagocytic polymorphonuclear *granulocyte*, having a nucleus with three to five lobes and fine cytoplasmic granules stainable by neutral dyes.

- *Note 1*: The cells have properties of *chemotaxis*, adherence to *immune complexes*, and *phago-cytosis*.
- *Note 2*: The cells are involved in a variety of inflammatory processes including late-phase *allergic* reactions and are also able to mediate *antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity* (*ADCC*).

Modified from [1] See also *phagocyte*.

neutrophil activation

Change in morphology and behavior of a *neutrophil* resulting from exposure to a *cytokine*, *chemokine*, cellular *ligand*, or soluble factor. See also *lymphocyte activation*.

nitric oxide

Generic term for nitrogen monoxide species, including nitrosonium ion, nitric oxide radical, etc., that can function in a cell-signaling capacity.

nondepleting antibody

Cell surface *antibody* that does not provoke attack by *killer cells* and thus does not provoke depletion of a group of cells in the body, usually referring to *B cells*.

non-Hodgkin lymphoma

Any of various malignant *lymphomas* characterized by the absence of *Reed–Sternberg cells* and producing symptoms similar to those of *Hodgkin disease*.

non-obese diabetic (NOD) mouse

Genetically modified mouse with a susceptibility to spontaneous development of *automimmune diabetes mellitus type I*.

non-self

Of, relating to, or designating a cell or tissue that has not been produced by the individual organism.

Note: Non-self molecules are identified by the *immune system* as foreign or abnormal, thus provoking an *immune response*.

nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT)

Transcription factor involved in rapid cell response to stress, such as injury or invading pathogens, and in cell proliferation and survival.

nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NFKB)

Protein complex that controls the transcription of genes involved in *cytokine* production, *cellular adhesion*, *inflammation*, and *apoptosis*.

Note: NFκB is found in almost all animal cell types and is involved in cellular responses to stimuli such as stress, cytokines, free radicals, ultraviolet irradiation, oxidized low-density lipoprotein (LDL), and bacterial or viral *antigens*.

nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein 1, 2 (NOD1, NOD2)

Members of a family of human intracellular proteins involved in the detection of invasive bacteria and activation of the $NF\kappa B$ transcription factor pathway.

Note: In epithelial cells, NOD1 is essential for sensing intracellular Gram-negative bacteria through a tripeptide motif in the bacterial peptidoglycan.

After [26]

nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein (NOD)-like receptor (NLR) NOD-like receptor protein (NLRP)

Cytosolic protein that contains a central nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain, an N-terminal effector-binding domain and C-terminal leucine-rich repeats (LRRs).

- *Note 1*: NOD-like *receptors* have been implicated as mediators of protective *immune responses* against intracellular pathogens.
- *Note 2*: Genetic associations of polymorphisms in NOD-like receptor genes with complex chronic inflammatory barrier diseases, such as *Crohn disease* and *asthma*, and with rare auto-inflammatory syndromes including familial cold urticaria, Muckle–Wells syndrome and *Blau syndrome* have been described.

See also NACHT domain-, leucine-rich repeat-, and PYD-containing protein 3 (NALP3, NLRP3). [27]

© 2012, IUPAC

nude mouse

Mouse that is *T*-cell-deficient due to a homozygous gene defect (nu/nu) resulting in the absence of a *thymus* (and also lack of body hair).

[3]

null cell

Lymphocyte with neither T- nor B-cell differentiation antigens on its surface.

ОКТЗ

Brand name for muromonab-CD3, an *immunosuppressant* drug given intravenously to reverse acute *rejection* of transplanted organs, including the heart, kidneys, and liver.

Note: OKT3 was the first *monoclonal antibody* used to treat patients. See also *antibody therapy*.

oligoclonal

Having a few different *clones*, or the product of a few different clones. After [3]

oncofetal antigen

Antigen whose expression is normally restricted to the fetus but which may be expressed during malignancy in adults.

[3]

opsonin

Substance, e.g., *antibody* or C3b, which enhances *phagocytosis* by promoting adhesion of the *antigen* to the *phagocyte*.

[3]

opsonization

Coating of antigen with an opsonin to enhance phagocytosis.

Note: The interaction of opsonized complexes with *Fc receptors* or *complement receptors* facilitates their uptake by the receptor-bearing *phagocytic cells*.

After [1]

oral tolerance

Orally induced and immune-mediated non-responsiveness. [1] See also *tolerance*.

oral vaccination

Immunization against a pathogen with a vaccine administered by mouth.

Ouchterlony technique

Ouchterlony double diffusion assay.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Double-radial immunodiffusion procedure for the detection of precipitating antibodies.

Note: Method of high diagnostic specificity but low sensitivity. After [1]

oxidative burst

See respiratory burst.

P-nucleotides

Palindromic nucleotide sequences generated at the junctions between *antibody* and *T-cell receptor* (*TCR*) variable (V), diversity (D), and joining (J) gene segments during gene rearrangement. [3]

P-selectin

Cell adhesion molecule expressed on the surface of activated endothelial cells and platelets.

pancytopenia

Decrease in the number of red blood cells, white blood cells, and *platelets*.

paracortical area

paracortex Region of a *lymph node* enriched in *T lymphocytes*.

paracrine

Type of signaling in which a cell secretes a chemical messenger that binds to *receptors* on nearby cells, leading to changes in those cells. Thus, describing or relating to a regulatory cell that secretes an agonist into intercellular spaces in which it diffuses to a target cell other than that which produces it, or describing or relating to such an agonist. After [26]

See also *autocrine*.

paramone

Paracrine agonist.

paraneoplastic autoimmune syndrome

Any of several *autoimmune diseases* that are caused by tumor-induced perturbations of the *immune system* with damaging effects on various organ systems (e.g. cancer-associated retinopathy, paraneoplastic neurological syndromes, paraneoplastic cutaneous syndromes). In most cases, *autoantibodies* generated by antitumor *immunity* are responsible for the tissue injury.

[1]

See also Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome (LEMS).

paratope

Site in the variable region of an *antibody* or *T*-cell receptor (*TCR*) that binds to an *epitope* of an *anti-*gen.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

particle immunoassay

Immunoassay in which *antibody* is bound to the surface of microspheres. After incubation with the *anti-gen*-containing biological fluid, and subsequent manipulation, detection is usually performed by *flow cytometry*.

passive cutaneous anaphylaxis (PCA) test

Assay for *allergen*icity in which an *antibody* is injected intradermally into a test animal followed at a later time (anywhere from 3 to 48 h) with an intravenous injection of a mixture of a test *antigen* and a dye (typically Evans blue). Increased vascular permeability at the site of antigen–antibody reaction is visualized by extravasation of the dye.

passive hemagglutination

Method of measuring *antibody titer*, in which *antigen*-coated *erythrocytes* are agglutinated (see *agglutination*) by adding antibody specific for the antigen.

passive immunization

Immunization of an individual by the transfer of antibody synthesized in another individual.

patch test

Test for *allergy* that is performed by placing the suspected *allergen* in direct contact with the skin or *mucosa*.

pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP)

Describing repetitive motifs of molecules such as *lipopolysaccharide (LPS)*, peptidoglycan, lipoteichoic acids, and mannans, which are widely expressed by microbial pathogens but are not present on *host* tissues. They are therefore utilized by the *pattern recognition receptors (PRRs)* of the *immune system* to distinguish pathogens from *self-antigens*.

[3]

pattern recognition receptor (PRR)

Receptor found on many different cell types in the *immune system* that enables them to recognize *pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs)*. Amongst the large number of different PRRs are the mannose receptor (CD206), *macrophage* scavenger receptor (CD204), and the *toll-like receptors (TLRs)*.

[3]

Note: Many of the *NOD-like receptors (NLRs)* are thought to serve as PRRs.

pauci-immune

Referring to *vasculitis* characterized by relatively little deposition of *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) and *complement* factors, usually describing a form of *glomerulonephritis*.

pemphigus

pemphigus vulgaris

Rare, serious *autoimmune disease* marked by successive outbreaks of blisters, which appear suddenly and disappear, leaving pigmented spots.

Note: Other mucous membranes, as well as the skin, are usually affected and the disease may be fatal.

peptide tetramer

Structure consisting of four identical *major histocompatability complex (MHC)*-encoded peptides, presenting four binding sites for biotin attached to the tail of the MHC molecule, and held together by fluorescent streptavidin.

peptide vaccine

Preparation of an immunologically active peptide found in a disease-causing organism or substance, or any of their products, which is specially treated for use in *vaccination*.

peptide-binding groove

Structural feature found in *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I* and *class II* heterodimeric proteins that can bind endogenous peptides. See also *antigen-presenting groove*.

perforin

Molecule produced by *cytotoxic T cells* and *natural killer (NK) cells* that, like *complement* component C9, polymerizes to form a pore in the membrane of the *target cell* leading to cell death. [3]

periarteriolar lymphoid sheath (PALS)

Lymphoid tissue that forms the *white pulp* of the *spleen*. [3]

periodontitis

Inflammatory reaction of the tissues surrounding a tooth (periodontium), usually resulting from the extension of gingival *inflammation* (gingivitis) into the periodontium, and involving inflammation and infection of the ligaments and bones that support the teeth.

peripheral blood leukocyte (PBL)

Leukocyte derived from the peripheral circulatory system.

peripheral blood mononuclear cell (PBMC)

Monocyte produced by the *bone marrow* from *hematopoietic stem cell* precursors, circulating in the bloodstream for about one to three days before moving into tissues throughout the body.

Note: PBMCs constitute between 3 to 8 % of the *leukocytes* in the blood. In the tissues monocytes mature into different types of *macrophages* at different anatomical locations [see *macrophage*, *resident(ial)*].

peripheral lymphoid organ

Any of the lymphoid organs (see *lymphoid tissue*) other than the *thymus*.

© 2012, IUPAC

peripheral neuropathy, autoimmune

Acute or chronic inflammatory neuropathy leading to demyelination and axonal damage of nerves and nerve roots associated with high-*titer*ed *autoantibodies* against gangliosides [e.g., *Guillain–Barré syn-drome (GBS)*, Miller–Fisher syndrome, acute sensory ataxic neuropathy]. [1]

peripheral tolerance

Specific immunological *tolerance* occurring outside of the primary lymphoid organs (see *lymphoid tis-sue*).

[3]

pernicious anemia

Disease in which the *erythrocytes* are abnormally formed, due to an inability to absorb vitamin B_{12} . True pernicious anemia refers specifically to a disorder of atrophied parietal cells leading to absent intrinsic factor, resulting in an inability to absorb B_{12} .

Note 1: This is the end stage of 10 to 15 % of autoimmune gastritis.

Note 2: This disease is associated with a variety of autoimmune endocrine diseases (e.g., *Hashimoto thyroiditis, Addison disease*, and autoimmune myasthenic syndromes).

Modified from [1]

pexophagy

Autophagy selective for degradation of peroxisomes, which can be separated into macropexophagy and micropexophagy.

Peyer's patch

Part of the *gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)* and found as a distinct lymphoid nodule, mainly in the small intestine.

After [3]

phage antibody library

Collection of *cloned antibody variable (V) region* gene sequences that can be expressed as *Fab* or scFv fusion proteins with bacteriophage coat proteins. These can be displayed on the surface of the phages. The gene encoding a recombinant *monoclonal antibody* is enclosed in the phage particle and can be selected from the library by binding of the phage to specific *antigen*. [3]

phage display library

See phage antibody library.

phagocyte

Cell, especially of *monocytelmacrophage* or *neutrophil* lineage, that is specialized for the engulfment of cellular and particulate matter. After [3]

phagocytic activity assay

phagocytosis assay

Method of quantifying *phagocytosis* in which yeast cells, stained with May–Grünwald stain, are incubated with *macrophages*, and subsequently, after a fixed time, yeast cells engulfed in the macrophages are counted.

phagocytosis

Process by which particulate material is endocytosed by a cell. See also *endocytosis*, *pinocytosis*. [5]

phagocytosis assay

See *phagocytic activity assay*.

phagolysosome

Intracellular vacuole where killing and digestion of phagocytosed material occurs following the fusion of a *phagosome* with a *lysosome*. [3]

See also phagocytosis.

phagosome

Intracellular vacuole produced following invagination of the cell membrane around phagocytosed material.

[3] See also *phagocytosis*.

Philadelphia chromosome

Chromosome resulting from a reciprocal translocation between human chromosomes 9 and 22, most commonly associated with *chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)*. See also *ABL oncogene*.

phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate (PMA)

tetradecanoyl phorbol acetate (TPA) *Mitogenic* phorbol ester that directly stimulates *protein kinase C (PKC)* and acts as a tumor promoter. [3]

phospholipase $C\gamma$ (PLC- γ)

Enzyme that cleaves phosphatidylinositol bisphosphate into diacylglycerol and inositol trisphosphate, leading to the activation of two major cell signaling pathways.

Note: One consequence of the signaling is *B*- and *T*-lymphocyte activation.

photoallergy

Type IV hypersensitivity reaction in which photoactivation of a substance produces a *hapten* that then acts as a *sensitizer*.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

photocontact dermatitis

Type of *contact dermatitis* arising when substances are transformed into either irritants or *allergens* upon exposure to light.

Note: Aftershave lotions, sunscreens, and certain topical sulfa drugs may be changed into allergens, while coal tar and certain oils used in manufacturing may become irritants after exposure to sunlight.

photosensitivity

Skin reddening due to an abnormal reaction to sunlight, characteristic of *systemic autoimmune diseases* [e.g., *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)*], and cutaneous and subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus.

[1]

phototoxicity test

Procedure used to identify the phototoxic potential of a test substance. The substance is administered either *systemically* or topically on the skin, and light is subsequently shone on the skin to photoexcite the substance.

Note: There is also an in vitro test using photoexposure of treated Balb c/3T3 cells followed by viability testing.

phytohemagglutinin (PHA)

Plant *lectin* that acts as a *T-cell mitogen*. [3]

pinocytosis

Type of *endocytosis* in which soluble material is taken up by the cell in a liquid phase and incorporated into vesicles. After [5]

placental barrier

See blood-placental barrier.

plantibody

Animal *antibody* (or fragment thereof), expressed in a genetically modified plant.

plaque assay

See anti-sheep red blood cell (SRBC) IgM response assay.

plaque-forming cell (PFC)

Antibody-secreting *plasma cell* detected in vitro by its ability to produce a "plaque" of lysed *antigen*-sensitized *erythrocytes* in the presence of *complement*.

[3]

See also plaque assay.

plasma

- 1. Fluid component of blood in which the blood cells and *platelets* are suspended.
- 2. Fluid component of semen produced by the accessory glands, the seminal vesicles, the prostate, and the bulbo-urethral glands.
- 3. Cell substance outside the nucleus (i.e., the cytoplasm).

[5]

plasmablast

Highly proliferative cell that is a developmental intermediate between small *B lymphocytes* and *immunoglobulin (Ig)*-secreting mature *plasma cells*.

plasma cell

Terminally differentiated *B lymphocyte*, with little or no capacity for mitotic division, that actively secretes large amounts of *antibody*.

Note: Plasma cells have eccentric nuclei, abundant cytoplasm, and distinct perinuclear haloes. The cytoplasm contains dense rough endoplasmic reticulum and a large Golgi complex. Modified from [1]

plasmacytoid dendritic cell

Dendritic cell of distinct lineage, found in blood and peripheral *lymphoid tissue*, which secretes large amounts of *interferon (IFN)* upon activation. After [2]

plasmacytoma

Mass of neoplastic monoclonal *plasma cells* growing in bone or soft tissue.

plasma exchange

See plasmapheresis.

plasmapheresis

plasma exchange

Technique of extracorporeal separation of blood cells from *plasma*, with return of the cells to the patient.

Note: Frequently used to remove antibodies in autoimmune disease.

platelet

thrombocyte

Small irregular or disc-shaped cell found in large numbers in mammalian blood, essential for blood clotting.

platelet-activating factor (PAF)

Alkyl phospholipid released by a variety of cell types including *mast cells* and *basophils*, which has immunoregulatory effects on *lymphocytes* and *monocytes/macrophages*, as well as causing *platelet* aggregation and *degranulation*.

After [3]

© 2012, IUPAC

platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF)

Protein synthesized by *platelets* that is released into the *serum* during blood clotting.

Note: PDGF represents the major growth factor in human serum and is a potent *mitogen* for connective tissue and glial cells.

pluripotent stem cell

Self-replicating cell capable of developing into cells and tissues of the three primary embryonic germ layers.

pokeweed mitogen (PWM)

Plant *lectin* which is a *T*-cell-dependent *B*-cell mitogen. [3]

pollenosis See *hay fever*.

polyarteritis nodosa

disseminated necrotizing periarteritis panarteritis periarteritis periarteritis nodosa Systemic disease characterized by widespread *inflammation* of small and medium-sized arteries in which many of the foci are nodular.

polyclonal

Many different *clones*, or the product of many different clones, e.g., polyclonal *antiserum*. [3]

polyclonal activator

Substance that induces *activation* of multiple clones of *B lymphocytes* or *T lymphocytes*. After [7] See also *mitogen*.

polyendocrinopathy, autoimmune

Autoimmune disease affecting multiple endocrine organs.

- Note 1: (i) The autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type 1 is characterized by mucocutaneous candidiasis in association with endocrine manifestation (also called APECED syndrome, autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy).
 (ii) The autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type 2 exhibits any combination of adrenal insufficiency (see *Addison disease*), *diabetes mellitus type 1*, lymphocytic thyroiditis (see *thyroiditis, autoimmune*), *hypoparathyroidism*, and gonadal failure.
- *Note 2*: In both types, organ-specific *autoantibodies* against a variety of endocrine glands are detectable.

After [1]

poly I:C

Polyinosinic:polycytidylic acid, a synthetic immunostimulant mimicking viral double-stranded RNA.

poly ICLC

Poly<u>i</u>nosinic:poly<u>c</u>ytidylic acid, poly-L-<u>l</u>ysine, and <u>c</u>arboxymethylcellulose (letter roots of the acronym underlined), a synthetic immunostimulant mimicking viral double-stranded RNA.

poly-Ig receptor

Receptor molecule that specifically binds *J* chain-containing polymeric *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*), i.e., dimeric secretory *immunoglobulin A* (*IgA*) and pentameric *immunoglobulin M* (*IgM*), and transports it across *mucosal* epithelium.

[3]

polymorphism (general)

Variability in shape or structure.

polymorphism (in genetics)

Occurring in more than one form within a species owing to the existence of multiple *alleles* at a particular genetic locus.

polymorphism (in metabolism)

polymorphia (in metabolism)

Interindividual variations in metabolism of endogenous and exogenous compounds due to genetic influences, leading to enhanced side effects, or to toxicity of drugs, or to different clinical effects (as in variation in metabolism of steroid hormones). After [5]

polymorphonuclear granulocyte

See polymorphonuclear leukocyte.

polymorphonuclear leukocyte

Mature *leukocyte* with granular cytoplasm and a segmented and irregularly shaped nucleus.

- *Note 1*: It is the predominating leukocyte in the blood and is found in the tissues during acute inflammatory processes and in the superficial surface aspects of a lesion during subacute or chronic *inflammation*.
- *Note 2*: There are three major types: *neutrophils*, *eosinophils*, and *basophils*.

polymyositis

Disorder characterized by *inflammation* and degeneration of skeletal muscle, causing pain, weakness, and wasting in affected (usually proximal) muscles.

popliteal lymph node assay (PLNA)

Test for immunosensitization measuring popliteal *lymph node* hyperplasia after subcutaneous injection of a test substance into the footpad of the hindpaw of a rodent.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

positive selection

Selection of those developing *T cells* in the *thymus* that are able to recognize self-*major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules*. This occurs by preventing *apoptosis* in these cells. [3]

pre-B cell

Cell in the *B-lymphocyte* lineage that has rearranged *heavy chain* but not *light chain* genes; it expresses surrogate light chains and μ heavy chain at its surface in conjunction with *immunoglobulins* Ig α and Ig β . All these molecules comprise the pre-B-cell *receptor* (pre-BCR). After [7]

precipitating antibody

Antibody that is capable of reacting with a soluble *antigen* with the formation of an insoluble antigenantibody complex. [26]

See also *precipitin*.

precipitin

Precipitate of *antibody* and multivalent *antigen* due to the formation of high-molecular-weight complexes.

[3]

pre-T cell

thymocyte

Cell differentiating into a *T lymphocyte* in the *thymus* gland.

Note: During maturation thymocytes express on their surface a precursor *T-cell receptor* (TCR) called a pre-T-cell receptor, and both *CD8* and *CD4* proteins (*double-positive cells*). At the same time they slowly migrate from the outer cortex of the thymus to the inner medullary region. Only the 2 % of cells capable of distinguishing *self-antigen* survive to maturity in the *medulla*. Here they become *single-positive cells*, expressing exclusively CD4 or CD8 surface proteins, and are exported from the thymus in the bloodstream to become *helper T cells (Th)* and *cytotoxic T cells*, respectively.

After [28]

prick test

Test carried out by placing a drop of a suspected *allergen*ic extract on the skin of the forearm and gently pricking it into the upper layer of skin. Sensitivity to a substance is indicated if the spot swells slightly and becomes red within about 15 min.

Note: A positive result is far from conclusive and, at best, gives a vague indication of allergenicity. The prick test is inappropriate as a test for food allergens.

primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)

Autoimmune liver disease that results in the destruction of bile ducts, leading to fibrosis and cirrhosis.

Note: Primary biliary cirrhosis-specific *antibodies* are *antimitochondrial antibodies (AMAs)* directed against proteins of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex (mainly the E2 subunit).

After [1]

primary challenge

See primary response.

primary immune response

Immune response to the first encounter with an *antigen*, characterized by slow production of *antibody* molecules and the *priming* of *lymphoid tissue* in readiness for the production of a *secondary immune response* on subsequent *challenge* with the same antigen.

Note: The primary response is generally weak, has a long induction phase or lag period, consists primarily of the release of *immunoglobulin* M (*IgM*) antibodies, and generates immunologic *memory*.

primary immunization

First introduction of a *vaccine* into the body for the purposes of inducing *immunity*. See also *primary immune response*.

primary lymphoid follicle

Region of a *secondary lymphoid organ* containing predominantly unstimulated *B lymphocytes* that develops into a *germinal center* following *antigen* stimulation. [7]

See also *lymphoid follicle*.

primary lymphoid organ

Site at which *immunocompetent lymphocytes* develop, i.e., *bone marrow* and *thymus* in mammals. [3]

primary myxedema

Atrophic form of diffuse autoimmune thyroiditis. See *thyroiditis, autoimmune*. [1]

primary response

See primary immune response.

primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC)

Chronic, non-bacterial, inflammatory narrowing of the bile ducts.

Note: Often associated with ulcerative colitis [see *inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)*]. After [1]

prime (vb)

Process of giving an initial *sensitization* to *antigen*. [3]

priming

See prime (vb).

privileged site

See *immunologically privileged site*.

professional antigen-presenting cell

Highly efficient antigen-presenting cell (APC), generally referring to dendritic cells, B cells, or macrophages.

Note: Other cells, e.g., *fibroblasts* and endothelial cells, that do not constitutively express *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II molecules* may be induced to do so by certain *cytokines* and are sometimes referred to as nonprofessional antigen-presenting cells.

programmed cell death

See apoptosis.

progressive systemic sclerosis

Systemic autoimmune disease marked by formation of hyalinized and thickened collagenous fibrous tissue, with thickening and adhesion of skin to underlying tissues, especially of the hands and face and vascular alterations.

See also scleroderma.

proinflammatory cytokine

Cytokine that initiates or enhances inflammation.

prolactin

Hormone that is involved in several aspects of endocrine physiology, including stimulation of milk production, which also regulates proliferation and differentiation of a variety of cells in the *immune system*.

Note: May play a role in the pathogenesis and clinical expression of *autoimmune diseases* [e.g., *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*].

After [1]

proliferation assay

Any test that determines the effect on increase in cell number of a test agent such as a *cytokine* or *mitogen*.

properdin

Relatively heat-labile, normal *serum* protein (a *euglobulin*) that, in the presence of *complement* component C3 and magnesium ions, is involved in the *alternative pathway of complement activation*, and acts nonspecifically against Gram-negative bacteria and viruses and may contribute to the lysis of *erythrocytes*.

Note: It migrates as a β 3-*globulin* and, although not an *antibody*, may act in conjunction with complement-fixing antibody.

prostaglandin

Acidic lipid derived from arachidonic acid that is able to increase vascular permeability, mediate fever, and can both stimulate and inhibit immunological responses.

[3]

proteasome

Cytoplasmic and nuclear multiprotein proteolytic complex involved in degradation of excess, damaged, or misfolded proteins.

Note: Cytoplasmic proteasome is important in antigen processing and presentation by *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules.*

protectin

CD59

Member of the *Ly-6* family of cell surface molecules that prevents insertion of the *membrane attack complex (MAC)* into the membrane, thereby protecting cells from *complement*-induced lysis.

protective immunity

Protection against infectious agents conferred by vaccination.

protein A

<u>Staphylococcus aureus</u> cell wall protein that binds to the *Fc region* of *immunoglobulin G (IgG)*. [3]

proteinase 3 (PR3)

Multifunctional enzyme of azurophilic granules of *neutrophils* and *monocytes* and the major target of *antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ANCA)*.

Note: PR3 *autoantibodies* are diagnostic markers for *Wegener granulomatosis (WG)* and are involved in the pathogenesis of this disease. They are also found in patients with other *autoimmune systemic* vasculitic diseases.

After [1]

protein G

Streptococcal cell wall protein that binds to the *Fc region* of *immunoglobulin G (IgG)*, with a wider species specificity than *protein A*.

protein kinase C (PKC)

Member of a kinase family with broad substrate specificity, activated by calcium, diacylglycerol, and (or) *phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate (PMA)*.

Note: It is activated during *B-lymphocyte* and *T-lymphocyte* activation.

prozone effect

Loss of *immunoprecipitation* or *agglutination* that occurs when *antibody* concentration is increased to an extent that the antibody is in such excess that it is no longer able to effectively cross-link the *antigen*. A similar phenomenon may occur in antigen excess. [3]

pseudoallergy

pseudoallergic reaction

Inflammatory or *anaphylactic* reaction with symptoms similar to an *allergy* but not involving an *anti-gen*-specific *immune response*, e.g., salicylate intolerance, reaction to contrast reagents.

Note: Causes include direct histamine release and/or complement activation.

psoriasis

Skin disorder that has a hereditary component and is characterized by erythematous patches covered with silvery scales, especially on the elbows, knees, and scalp.

Note: Psoriasis is associated with excessively rapid proliferation of *keratinocytes* which mature in less than a week.

psoriatic

Of, relating to, or associated with *psoriasis*; affected with psoriasis.

purified protein derivative (PPD)

Partially purified derivative of tuberculin used in the Mantoux test for tuberculosis.

purpura

Purple discoloration occurring in patches on the skin, mucus membranes, or organs. See also *idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)*.

pyrogen

Any substance that produces fever. [5]

pyrogen test

Any of various tests used to determine whether an agent, usually an infusion or injection fluid, is free of *pyrogens*.

Note: Examples include (i) the rabbit test, observing whether the body temperature of the animal increases after administration of the agent, (ii) the *Limulus test*, measuring the

effects of *endotoxins* on a biological system, and (iii) in vitro tests, observing the release of *interleukin*-1 β from human blood cells during incubation with the test fluid.

Qa antigen

"Non-classical" major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecule in mice. [3]

radial immunodiffusion

Mancini immunodiffusion

Method for quantifying an *antigen* by measuring the diameters of circular precipitates around an antigen-spiked cavity in an antibody-containing agar gel.

radioallergosorbent test (RAST)

Solid-phase radioimmunoassay (RIA) for detecting immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibody specific for a particular antigen.

[4]

radioimmunoassay (RIA)

Technique for measuring the level of a biologic substance in a sample, by measuring the binding of antigen to radioactively labeled antibody (or vice versa). [7]

radioimmunoconjugate

Biochemical *conjugate* consisting of an immune-targeting molecule such as an *antibody* or antibody fragment together with a cytotoxic radionuclide. [3]

Raynaud phenomenon

Intermittent bilateral attacks of vasospasm and ischemia of the fingers or toes and sometimes of the ears and nose, marked by a severe pallor and often accompanied by paresthesia and pain.

- Note 1: It is brought on characteristically by cold or emotional stimuli and relieved by heat, and may be due to an underlying disease or anatomic abnormality.
- Note 2: The phenomenon is more common in women than men and occurs in most patients with progressive systemic sclerosis (SSc), mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD), and polymyositis/scleroderma overlap syndrome.

Note 3: When the condition is *idiopathic* or primary, it is termed Raynaud disease.

After [18]

reactive airways dysfunction syndrome (RADS)

Syndrome characterized by reversible airflow limitation and complicating bronchial hyperresponsiveness induced by acute exposure to high concentrations of non-sensitizer irritant gases.

reactive oxygen intermediate (ROI)

See reactive oxygen species (ROS).

reactive oxygen species (ROS)

Intermediates in the reduction of molecular dioxygen, O2, to water.

Note: Examples are superoxide $(O_2^{-\bullet})$, hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) , and hydroxyl (HO•).

reagin

Historic term for antibodies of the immunoglobulin E (IgE) class.

recall antigen

Substance recognized by *memory cells* that stimulates rapid (*secondary*) *immune responses*, often associated with *hypersensitivity*.

receptor

Molecule that binds to a *ligand*, thus leading to biochemical signaling inside the cell.

Note: Receptors are usually transmembrane molecules that bind ligands at the extracellular surface (e.g., *growth factor* receptors) or soluble intracellular molecules (e.g., steroid hormone receptors).

recombinant antibody

Antibody fragment manufactured by use of genetically modified microorganisms.

recombination-activating gene (RAG)

Gene whose products are involved in V(D)J recombination in B cells and T cells. Two such genes that have been identified are RAG-1 and RAG-2.

recombination signal sequence (RSS)

Any conserved heptamer (7- nucleotide)-nonamer (9-nucleotide) sequence, separated by a 12 or 23 base spacer, which occurs 3' of variable gene segments, 5' and 3' of diversity gene segments, and 5' of joining gene segments, in both *immunoglobulin (Ig)* and *T-cell receptor (TCR)* genes. It functions as a recognition sequence for the recombinase enzymes that mediate the gene rearrangement process involved in the generation of *lymphocyte antigen receptor* diversity. After [3]

red pulp

splenic pulp

Parenchymal tissue of the *spleen* consisting of cords of cells and sinuses infiltrated with *erythrocytes* and responsible for removal of aged or damaged erythrocytes. See also *white pulp*.

Reed–Sternberg cell

Large transformed lymphocyte, often binucleate, considered pathognomonic of Hodgkin lymphoma.

regulated upon activation normal T cell expressed and secreted (RANTES)

Chemokine secreted by T cells and macrophages upon stimulation by mitogens, which acts as a chemoattractant and stimulates eosinophils and basophils.

regulatory idiotope

Antibody or *T-cell receptor (TCR) idiotope* capable of regulating *immune responses* via interaction with lymphocytes bearing complementary idiotopes (anti-idiotopes). [3]

regulatory T cell (Treg)

T cell that controls the maintenance of normal immune homeostasis. Treg cells are involved in controlling (anergizing or counter-regulating) autoreactive cells that escaped from *thymic negative selection*. See also CD8+T suppressor cell, CD4+CD25+T cell. [1]

rejection (in immunology)

Immune response leading to destruction of a transplanted organ or tissue. See also *acute rejection, chronic rejection, graft rejection*.

resistance (in immunology)

Ability of an organism to withstand an infection.

Note: Bacterial resistance is the ability of a bacterium to grow despite the presence of an antibiotic.

respiratory burst

Generation of *cytotoxic* superoxide from dioxygen due to increased NADPH oxidase activity, typically occurring in activated *neutrophils*. See also *neutrophil activation*.

respiratory hypersensitivity assay

Test of the ability of a substance to induce *hyperreactivity* in the airways, typically measured as an increase in the rate of respiration of guinea pigs during inhalation of the substance.

restriction (in immunology)

See major histocompatibility complex (MHC) restriction.

reticuloendothelial system (RES)

See mononuclear phagocyte system (MPS).

reverse immunology

High-throughput procedure where information on potential *immunogen*ic tumor proteins is gained from the amino acid sequences of gene products specifically expressed by the tumor, followed by predicted fitting of putative *antigen*ic peptides to a *peptide-binding groove*, and finally experimental verification.

Rhesus (Rh) factor

Protein expressed on the surface of erythrocytes, especially the D antigen of the Rh blood group.

Note: Rh positivity is a common cause of *transfusion* reaction and hemolytic disease of the newborn.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

rheumatic fever

Inflammatory disease that may develop following a streptococcal infection such as strep throat, and may affect the heart, joints, skin, and brain.

rheumatoid arthritis (RA)

Episodic inflammatory systemic disease with autoimmune pathogenetic mechanisms.

Note: It primarily affects the joints, causing symmetrical lesions and severe damage to the affected joints. RA is the most common form of inflammatory joint disease (prevalence about 0.5 to 1 %).

After [1]

rheumatoid factor

Immunoglobulins IgM, IgG, and IgA autoantibodies to the Fc region of IgG.

Note: Although detectable in various diseases, rheumatoid factor is used as a classification criterion of *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*.

Modified from [3]

rhinitis

Inflammation of the mucous membrane of the nose.

rhinitis, allergic

Nasal discharge resulting from an *allergic* response.

rocket electrophoresis

Technique in which a test *antigen* is electrophoretically driven through an *antibody*-containing gel. The rocket-shaped tails of precipitation give information on the antigen concentration.

rosette

Particles or cells bound to the surface of a *lymphocyte* (e.g., sheep *erythrocytes* around a human *T cell*). [3]

scFv

Single-chain molecule composed of the *variable* (*V*) *regions* of an *antibody heavy* and *light chain* joined together by a flexible linker.

[3]

sarcoid

See sarcoidosis.

sarcoidosis

Chronic, progressive, generalized *granuloma*tous reticulosis of unknown etiology, involving almost any organ or tissue, including the skin, lungs, lymph nodes, liver, spleen, eyes, and small bones of the hands and feet. It is characterized histologically by the presence in all affected organs or tissues of non-caseating epithelioid cell tubercles.

Note: There is usually diminished or absent reactivity to *tuberculin*, and in most active cases, a positive *Kveim reaction*.

scavenger receptor

Cell surface *receptor*, for example on *phagocytes*, which recognizes cells or molecules that require clearance from the body.

[3]

scleroderma

Chronic progressive autoimmune disease characterized by systemic fibrosis and vascular changes.

Note: There are two types: *progressive systemic sclerosis*, and a more limited and less rapidly progressive form known as CREST syndrome, referring to Calcinosis, *Raynaud phenomenon*, Esophageal dysfunction, Sclerodactyly, and Telangiectasias.

secondary challenge

Second exposure of *primed lymphocytes* to a given *antigen*. See also *secondary immune response*.

secondary immune response

Qualitatively and quantitatively improved *immune response* that occurs upon the second encounter of *primed lymphocytes* with a given *antigen*. [3]

secondary lymphoid tissue (organ)

Tissue (organ) in which *antigen*-driven proliferation and differentiation of *mature B* and *T lymphocytes* take place following antigen recognition. Examples include *lymph nodes*, *Peyer's patches*, and the *spleen*.

See also *mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT)*. [7]

second messenger

Substance inside a cell responsible for communicating a chemical signal from another substance that cannot itself enter the cell, but acts through binding to cell surface *receptors*.

Note: Common second messengers are cyclic AMP, Ca²⁺, and inositol-1,4,5-triphosphate.

second set rejection

Accelerated *rejection* of an *allograft* in a *primed* recipient. [7]

secretory component

Proteolytic cleavage product of the poly-Ig receptor which remains associated with dimeric *immunoglobulin A* (IgA) in sero-mucus secretions.

[3]

secretory immunoglobulin A (IgA)

Dimeric *immunoglobulin A (IgA)* found in sero-mucus secretions. [3]

selectin

Any member of a family of cell-surface *adhesion molecules* found on *leukocytes* and endothelial cells and that bind to sugars on glycoproteins.

selection theory (in immunology)

See clonal selection.

selective IgA deficiency (SIgAD)

Most common form of primary immunodeficiency.

Note: Autoimmunity is the most prevalent manifestation of this deficiency. Individuals with SIgAD have an increased risk of developing systemic [e.g., systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), rheumatoid arthritis (RA)] and organ-specific (e.g., celiac disease) autoimmune disorders.

After [1]

self-antigen

See autoantigen.

self-tolerance

Specific immunological unresponsiveness to a defined *autoantigen*.

- *Note 1*: Primary (*clonal deletion, anergy, clonal indifference*) and secondary or regulatory (interclonal competition, suppression, *immune deviation, vetoing*, feedback regulation by the *idiotypic network*) mechanisms are involved in the induction and maintenance of self-tolerance.
- *Note 2*: Breaking self-tolerance may lead to pathological *autoimmunity* and development of *autoimmune disease*.

After [1]

sensitization

Alteration of a body's responsiveness to a foreign *antigen*, usually an *allergen*, such that upon subsequent exposures to the allergen there is a heightened *immune response*.

sensitizer

Substance that brings about *sensitization*.

sepsis

Spread of bacteria or bacterial products throughout the blood, eliciting a life-threatening, *systemic* inflammatory reaction (see *inflammation*).

seroconversion

The appearance in the blood serum of detectable antibodies against a specific infectious agent.

serology

Study of serum, especially blood serum, frequently used to detect antibodies to microorganisms.

serum

- 1. Clear watery fluid, especially that which moistens the surface of serous membranes or that exudes through *inflammation* of any of these membranes.
- 2. Watery proteinaceous portion of the blood that remains after clotting.

[5]

serum sickness

Hypersensitive reaction to the administration of a foreign *serum*, characterized by fever, swelling, skin rash, and enlargement of the *lymph nodes*.

severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)

Immunodeficiency affecting both *T* and *B lymphocytes*. [3]

sheep red blood cell (SRBC) antigen

T-cell-dependent target antigen often used in hemolytic plaque assays of immune responsiveness.

signaling lectin (SIGLEC)

Any member of a large family of *lectins* that bind sialylated glycans.

Note: Most are associated with cells of the *immune system*.

signal peptide

signal sequence

Any sequence of amino acid residues that, when linked to a newly synthesized protein, identifies it to transport mechanisms that guide the protein to a specific location among the organelles of a eukaryotic cell, or from the cytoplasm to the periplasmic space of prokaryotic cells.

signal sequence

See signal peptide.

signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT)

Any member of a family of cytoplasmic proteins that act as *second messengers* to activate gene transcription in response to *cytokines* and *growth factors*. See also *JAK/STAT signaling pathway*.

signal transduction

Process whereby a signal arising outside the cell is converted through a series of intermediate chemical reactions inside the cell to produce a functional change in the cell.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

See also cytokine, growth factor, receptor, second messenger.

single-chain antibody (SCA)

Small *antibody* construct in which the variable fragment (Fv) [see variable (V) region] of a heavy chain is linked via a synthetic peptide to the variable fragment of a *light chain*.

single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP)

Single base variation at a chromosomal locus, which exists stably within populations (typically defined as each variant form being present in at least 1 to 2 % of individuals). [5]

single-positive cell

See pre-T cell.

Sjögren syndrome

Chronic *inflammation* of the lachrymal and salivary glands, often accompanied by *rheumatoid arthritis* (*RA*) and the presence of *autoantibodies* in the blood, occurring chiefly among women.

Note: Two types of Sjögren syndrome are distinguished: a primary (isolated) type and a secondary type associated with another underlying autoimmune disease [e.g., *RA*, *systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)*, *systemic sclerosis (SSc)*, *primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)*, *autoimmune hepatitis (AIH)*, *multiple sclerosis*, *autoimmune thyroiditis*, etc.]. Ro/SS-A and La/SS-B autoantibodies are used as classification criteria.

Modified from [1]

skin immune system (SIS)

Skin-associated cells that participate in an *immune response*, including *Langerhans cells*, *dendritic cells*, and *keratinocytes* (mainly responsible for production of *cytokines*). [8]

skin sensitization test

Any test used to study skin hypersensitivity such as the guinea pig maximization test or the Buehler test.

skin test

Procedure for evaluating *immunity* status, involving the introduction of a reagent into or under the skin.

slow-reacting substance of anaphylaxis (SRS-A)

Group of *leukotrienes* released by *mast cells* during *anaphylaxis*, which induces a prolonged contraction of smooth muscle.

After [7]

small G protein

Any member of a family of monomeric *G proteins*, with molecular mass typically 20–40 kDa, that also bind guanine nucleotides and are involved in *signal transduction*.

small outer capsid (SOC) protein

Protein from the shell of the bacteriophage T4, commonly used in construction of *phage antibody libraries*.

somatic diversification theory

Theory that very few *immunoglobulins (Ig)* are inherited, but that extensive *antibody* diversity arises from mutations in non-reproductive cells.

See also somatic hypermutation, somatic recombination, V(D)J recombination.

somatic gene conversion

Nonreciprocal exchange of nucleic acid sequences between genes in which part of the donor gene or genes is "copied" into an acceptor gene, but only the acceptor gene is altered.

Note: This exchange is a mechanism for generating a diverse *immunoglobulin (Ig)* repertoire in many non-human species.

After [7]

somatic hypermutation (SHM)

Programmed process of mutation affecting the *variable (V) regions* of *immunoglobulin (Ig)* genes. SHM affects only individual immune cells, and the mutations are not transmitted to offspring.

Note 1: This process is part of the way the *immune system* adapts to new foreign substances.

Note 2: Mistargeted SMH is a likely mechanism in the development of B-cell *lymphoma*.

somatic recombination

Process giving rise to increased *antibody* diversity by cutting and splicing *immunoglobulin* (*Ig*) genes during *lymphocyte* differentiation.

See also combinatorial diversity, V(D)J recombination.

spleen

Largest of the *secondary lymphoid organs*, composed of *white pulp*, rich in lymphoid cells, and *red pulp*, which contains many *erythrocytes* and *macrophages*.

Note: The spleen traps damaged erythrocytes carried in the blood. After [7]

splenic

Of, pertaining to, connected with, or situated in the *spleen*.

splenic pulp

See red pulp.

splenocyte Any *splenic* cell.

Glossary of terms used in immunotoxicology

split adjuvant technique

Test for *allergic contact dermatitis* in which guinea pig skin is exposed to repeated applications of a test substance and intradermal injections of complete *Freund's adjuvant* are administered separately.

spondylitis

Inflammation of the vertebral column.

spontaneous autoimmune thyroiditis (SAT)

Autoimmune thyroiditis (see *thyroiditis, autoimmune*) that develops spontaneously (without any apparent cause or manipulation) in certain strains of mice and rats (e.g., *NOD mice*, BB and BUF rats) as well as in other animals (e.g., OS chickens, marmoset monkeys, beagles). [1]

stem cell

Multipotent cell with mitotic potential that may serve as a precursor for many kinds of differentiated cells.

[5]

Stevens–Johnson syndrome

bullous erythema multiforme

Allergic reaction, often to a medication (see *adverse drug reaction*) or infection, characterized by blistering of the skin and ulceration of *mucosal* membranes.

stroma

Supporting tissue of an organ.

stromal cell

Cell found in the loose connective tissue (*stroma*) of an organ. Stromal cells include immune and inflammatory cells, pericytes, and *fibroblasts*.

subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus (SCLE)

Chronic remitting form of *dermatitis* characterized by severe photosensitivity and Ro/SS-A and La/SS-B *autoantibodies*.

[1]

superantigen

Antigen which reacts with all the *T* cells belonging to a particular *T*-cell receptor (*TCR*) variable (*V*) region family, and which therefore stimulates (or deletes) a much larger number of cells than does conventional antigen.

[3]

superfamily

Large group of proteins related by structural homology and function. The term also refers to the genes that encode them.

suppression

Dominant immunological *tolerance*, a phenomenon that plays an active role in regulating *T-cell* and *B-cell* responses to both foreign *antigens* and *autoantigens*.

Note: The downregulation of responses to autoantigens is a major regulatory mechanism involved in the induction and maintenance of *self-tolerance*.

After [1]

suppressor cell

suppressor T cell suppressor T lymphocyte *T cell* that suppresses the *immune response* of *B cells* and other T cells to an *antigen*. In more current usage classified as a *regulatory T cell*.

supramolecular adhesion complex (SMAC)

Collection of molecules forming at the contact point of a *T cell* and an *antigen-presenting cell (APC)*, enriched in *T-cell receptor (TCR)*, *adhesion molecules*, and signaling molecules.

surrogate light chain

Light chain-like structure formed when the proteins encoded by the V_{preB} and λ_5 genes associate with each other. It can form *immunoglobulin (Ig)*-like complexes which are expressed on the surface of *pre-B cells* at different stages of development. After [29]

switch region

See switch sequence.

switch sequence

Highly conserved repetitive sequence that mediates *class switching* in the *immunoglobulin (Ig) heavy chain* gene locus.

[3]

sympathetic ophthalmia

Autoimmune injury to one eye that occurs after penetrating injury or surgery to the other eye.

syngeneic

Genetically identical, e.g., a fully inbred strain of mice. [3]

Note: A practical consequence is that cells can be transferred to other syngeneic animals without *rejection*.

syngraft

See isograft.

systemic

- 1. Relating to the body as a whole.
- 2. Occurring at a site in the body remote from the point of contact with a substance.

[5]

systemic autoimmune disease

Autoimmune disease affecting a number of organs or tissues, or the whole body.

systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)

Chronic *autoimmune disease* that is potentially debilitating and sometimes fatal as the *immune system* attacks the body's cells and tissues, with *inflammation* and tissue damage.

- *Note 1*: SLE can affect any part of the body, but most often harms the heart, joints, skin, lungs, blood vessels, liver, kidneys, and nervous system. The course of the disease is unpredictable, with periods of illness (called flares) alternating with remission. SLE can occur at any age, and is most common in women, particularly of non-European descent.
- *Note 2*: The disease is very heterogeneous in clinical expression and serological factors. *Autoantibodies* directed against nuclear components [*antinuclear antibodies* (*ANA*)] are typically detected. Anti-dsDNA, anti-Sm, and antiphospholipid *antibodies* are used as classification criteria.

Modified from [1]

systemic sclerosis (SSc)

Fibrosing disease of unclear etiology that affects multiple organ systems.

- *Note 1*: The skin ("*scleroderma*") and blood vessels (arteries, small vessels) are most commonly affected, but involvement of the lungs and gastrointestinal tract (esophagus) may also be observed.
- *Note 2*: Anticentromere *antibodies* (ACA) as well as *autoantibodies* against DNA topoisomerase I (scl-70) and various nucleolar *antigens* are diagnostic and prognostic markers and are often detectable years before disease manifestation. They are also detectable in quartz dust-exposed individuals.

After [1]

T cell See *T lymphocyte*.

T cell, drug-specific

T-memory cell that is specific for a drug allergen.

T-cell-dependent antibody response (TDAR)

*Immunotoxic*ity test that evaluates the ability of animals to produce *antibodies* to a *T*-dependent antigen [e.g., sheep red blood cells (SRBCs) or keyhole limpet hemocyanin (KLH)].

T-cell receptor (TCR)

Antigen-specific receptor on T cells composed of one set of heterodimeric chains. Two types of TCR heterodimers are known $(\alpha/\beta \text{ and } \gamma/\delta)$.

Note: Functional binding for TCR requires a complex of *major histocompatibility complex* (*MHC*) *molecule*, *antigenic* peptide, and TCR.

After [1]

T-dependent antigen

Antigen that requires helper T lymphocytes (Th) in order to elicit an antibody response. [3]

TdT-dependent dUTP-biotin nick end labeling (TUNEL) assay

Method for detecting *apoptotic* cells in situ based on characteristic DNA fragmentation. It is based on the ability of *terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT)* to transfer a labeled deoxynucleotidyl phate to the terminal ends arising from DNA cleavage.

T helper cell

See helper T lymphocyte (Th).

Th0 cell

Helper T lymphocyte (Th) with a less restricted cytokine profile than Th1 and Th2 cells.

Note: Th0-like responses are observed in patients with *rheumatoid arthritis (RA)*, *Sjögren syndrome*, and *Graves disease*.

After [1]

Th1 cell

Helper T lymphocyte (Th) producing mainly *interleukin-2* (IL-2), *interferon (IFN-\gamma)*, and *tumor necrosis factor* β (*TNF-\beta*), and thereby responsible for *phagocyte*-dependent *host* responses.

Note: Th1-dominated responses are seen in *autoimmune diseases* in which *cytotoxic T cells* and *macrophages* play a major role, e.g., *multiple sclerosis, diabetes mellitus type 1*, *Hashimoto thyroiditis*, and *Crohn disease*. Switching from Th1 to *Th2* response can prevent Th1-mediated tissue destruction in animal models.

After [1]

Th2 cell

Helper T lymphocyte (Th) in mice producing interleukins IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-9, IL-10, and IL-13.

Note: Besides other effects, they provide optimal help for *antibody* responses. Th2 responses should also be regarded as an important downregulatory mechanism for exaggerated *Th1* responses. Predominant Th2 *cytokine* profile is observed in patients with *atopic* disorders and *graft-versus-host disease (GVHD)*.

After [1]

Th3 cell

Helper T lymphocyte (Th) producing and responding to *transforming growth factor* β (*TGF-* β) and helping *immunoglobulin A (IgA) antibody* responses.

Th9 cell

Helper T lymphocyte (Th) producing interleukin IL-9, which stimulates mast cells.

Th17 cell (T17)

Helper T lymphocyte (Th), distinct from Th1 and Th2 cells, that secretes the interleukin IL-17.

Note: T17 *lymphocytes* are thought to play an important role in *autoimmune disease*.

T-independent antigen

Antigen that is able to elicit an *antibody* response in the absence of *T cells*. [3]

T lymphocyte

Lymphocyte that matures in the *thymus* and has the ability to recognize specific peptide *antigens* through the *receptors* on its cell surface.

Note: T-cell receptor (TCR) molecules are specific for complexes comprising short peptides bound to and presented by *major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules*.

Tr1 cell

T lymphocyte that regulates *Th1 cell* responses. It resembles the *regulatory T cell (Treg)* and is possibly related to the *Th3 cell*.

Note: It is abundant in the intestine and may be involved in *tolerance* to dietary *antigens*.

tandem conjugate

Molecular construct with two fluorochromes where the first excites the second by its emission.

Note: Used in *flow cytometry* analysis.

target cell (in immunology)

Cell killed by one of the body's killer cells, such as a cytotoxic T lymphocyte or natural killer (NK) cell.

terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT)

Enzyme that inserts non-coded nucleotides at the junctions of V, D, and J gene segments of *immuno-glogulin* (Ig) and T-cell receptor (TCR) locus DNA, thus increasing the diversity of *antigen*-specific recognition.

tetanus toxoid

Detoxified tetanus toxin used to produce active immunity (see active immune response) against tetanus.

tetradecanoyl phorbol acetate (TPA)

See phorbol myristate acetate (PMA).

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

tetramer staining

Technique used for selective staining of *antigen*-specific *T lymphocytes* in vitro or in situ. The antigen is presented to T cells by *peptide tetramer* constructs of *major histocompatability (MHC) class I molecules*. It is also used to isolate antigen-specific T-cell populations for *clonal expansion*.

tertiary lymphoid tissue (organ)

Ectopic lymphoid aggregates that accumulate during the process of chronic immune stimulation, and exhibit characteristics usually associated with the *secondary lymphoid organs*. [30]

therapeutic antibody

See antibody, therapeutic.

thrombocyte

Same as platelet.

thrombocytopenia

Abnormal decrease in the number of *platelets* to less than 150×10^9 per litre of blood.

Note: Frequently detected in patients with autoimmune diseases [e.g., systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Sjögren syndrome, mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD), antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)]. Primary forms may be drug-induced (heparin-induced thrombocytopenia) or mediated by antiplatelet antibodies [idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)].

After [1]

thromboxane

Any of several substances (predominantly thromboxanes A2 and B2) synthesized by *platelets* from arachidonic acid precursor, that cause vasoconstriction of vascular and bronchial smooth muscle and facilitates platelet aggregation.

thrush

Oral infection with Candida albicans, often in patients with immunosuppression.

thymic

Pertaining to the *thymus*.

thymic atrophy

Involution of the *thymus* gland leading to a diminished capacity to generate new T cells.

thymic education

Process by which *T cells*, developing in the *thymus*, are screened for potentially harmful self-reactive T cells (which are removed), while potentially beneficial T cells are promoted.

thymocyte

See *pre-T* cell.

thymoma

Rare, usually benign, tumor arising from tissue of the *thymus* gland.

Note: Thymoma is often associated with *myasthenia gravis*.

thymus

Pyramid-shaped organ in the thoracic or cervical region of mammals, composed of *lymphatic tissue* in which minute concentric bodies (*thymic* corpuscles, the remnants of epithelial structures) are found.

- *Note 1: Stem cells* in the outer cortex of thymus develop into different kinds of *T cells*. Some migrate to the inner *medulla* and enter the bloodstream; those that do not may be destroyed to prevent *autoimmune* reactions.
- *Note 2*: This organ is necessary for the development of thymus-derived *lymphocytes* (T cells) and is the source of several hormones involved in T-cell maturation, for example, thymosin, thymopoietin, thymulin, and thymocyte humoral factor.
- *Note 3*: If a newborn's thymus is removed, not enough T cells are produced, the *spleen* and *lymph nodes* have little tissue, and the *immune system* fails, causing a gradual, fatal wasting disease. Thymus removal in adults has little effect.

thymus-dependent (TD) antigen

Antigen that requires the participation of T lymphocytes to elicit an immune response in B lymphocytes.

thymus-independent antigen

Antigen that does not require the participation of *T lymphocytes* to elicit an *immune response* in *B cells*.

thyroglobulin (TG)

Glycoprotein secreted by thyroid follicular cells that is a major *autoantigen* in *autoimmune diseases* of the thyroid.

Note: Thyroglobulin *autoantibodies* are found in patients with *autoimmune thyroiditis*, and *Graves disease*.

After [1]

thyroiditis, autoimmune

Inflammatory destruction of the thyroid gland (ranging from a mild focal thyroiditis to extensive *lymphocytic* infiltration and scarring) often associated with goiter and hypothyroidism.

Note: The most common types of autoimmune thyroiditis are *Hashimoto thyroiditis* and atrophic thyroiditis.

After [1]

thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (TSHR)

Main *autoantigen*ic target in patients with *Graves disease*.

Note: Most TSHR *autoantibodies* are stimulatory, acting as agonists of thyroid-stimulating hormone, but *receptor*-blocking *antibodies* are also found.

After [1]

thyroid peroxidase (TPO)

Thyroid enzyme that is a major *autoantigen* in *autoimmune diseases* of the thyroid. [1]

tissue transglutaminase (tTG)

Main target of *autoantibodies* in *celiac disease*. [1]

titer (in immunology)

Reciprocal of the highest dilution of a titration of an *antigen* with an *antibody* that gives a measurable effect (e.g., *agglutination*), and thus an empirical measure of the *avidity* of an antibody. For example, if the effect is seen until a dilution of 1:1000, the antibody titer is 1000.

tolerance

See immunological tolerance.

tolerogen

Antigen used to induce tolerance.

Note: Induction depends strongly on the circumstances of administration (e.g., route and concentration) in addition to any inherent property of the molecule.

After [3]

toll-like receptor (TLR)

Member of a family of *pattern recognition receptors* involved in the detection of structures associated with pathogens or damaged *host* tissues.

tonsil

Small, rounded mass of tissue, especially of *lymphoid tissue*; generally used alone to designate one of the paired palatine tonsils.

toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN)

Lyell syndrome

A severe form of *Stevens–Johnson syndrome* with extensive detachment of the skin, often as a result of an *allergic adverse drug reaction*.

toxic shock syndrome

Systemic reaction produced by the *toxin* derived from the bacterium <u>Staphylococcus aureus</u>; the toxin acts as a *superantigen*, which activates a high proportion of *CD4+ T lymphocytes* to produce *cytokines*. [7]

toxin

Poisonous substance produced by a biological organism such as a microbe, animal, plant, or fungus.

Note: Examples are botulinum toxin, tetrodotoxin, pyrrolizidine alkaloids, and amanitin.

[5]

Compare immunotoxin.

toxoid

Chemically or physically modified *toxin* that is no longer harmful but retains *immunogen*icity. [3]

transcytosis

Vesicular transport of macromolecules from one side of a cell to the other, through the cell's interior.

transforming growth factor β (TGF- β)

Secreted member of the protein *superfamily* of the same name that functions in controlling the cell cycle and *apoptosis*.

Note: TGF- β is involved in several aspects of regulation of the *immune system* and blocks activation of *lymphocytes* and *macrophages*.

transfusion, blood

Transference of blood or blood-based products from one individual into the circulation of another.

transplantation

Grafting solid tissue (e.g., cornea) or organ (e.g., kidney or heart), or cells (particularly *bone marrow*), from one individual to another. See also *allograft, xenograft*. After [7]

transplant rejection

See rejection.

transporters associated with antigen processing (TAP-1 and TAP-2)

Molecules that carry *antigenic* peptides from the cytoplasm into the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum for incorporation into *major histocompatibility (MHC) class I molecules*. [3]

tryptophan

(2*S*)-2-amino-3-(1*H*-indol-3-yl)propanoic acid Essential amino acid for humans, and required for *T*-*cell* proliferation. See also *indolamine-2,3-dioxygenase (IDO)*.

tuberculin

Antigen found in extracts of Mycobacteria, used in a skin test for tuberculosis (Mantoux test).

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

tuberculin test

Diagnostic test in which *antigens* derived from the organism causing tuberculosis (<u>Mycobacterium</u> <u>tuberculosis</u>) are injected subcutaneously; individuals who have been exposed to the organism develop a *delayed-type hypersensitivity* (*DTH*) response at the injection site 24 to 48 h later.

Note: Those who have been previously vaccinated with *bacille Calmette–Guérin (BCG)* also show a positive response.

[7]

tumor antigen

Antigen whose expression is associated with tumor cells. [3]

tumor immunology

Application of *immunology* to understanding tumor biology, *immune system* avoidance by tumors, and *immunotherapy* directed against tumors.

tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte (TIL)

Mononuclear *lymphocyte* derived from the inflammatory infiltrate of a solid tumor. After [7]

tumor necrosis factor (TNF)

cachectin cachexin TNF-α

Protein produced and secreted by several of the body's cell types, including *leukocytes*.

Note 1: It promotes the destruction of some types of cancer cells and is a *cytokine* involved in *systemic inflammation*.

Note 2: Activation of the TNF-α *receptor* may trigger *apoptosis* through the *extrinsic pathway*. After [5]

tumor necrosis factor β (TNF- β)

See lymphotoxin.

tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor-associated factor (TRAF)

Family of proteins involved in regulating *inflammation* and *apoptosis* through interaction with the *tumor necrosis factor receptor*.

tumor rejection antigen (TRA)

Antigen present specifically on a tumor cell that may target it for destruction by the *immune system* or for *antibody therapy*.

tumor-specific transplantation antigen (TSTA)

Antigen, present only on a tumor cell, and targetable by the immune system or by antibody therapy in order to destroy the tumor.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012
type 1 diabetes mellitus

See diabetes mellitus type 1.

type I hypersensitivity

See Gell and Coombs classification, immediate-type hypersensitivity.

type II hypersensitivity

See Gell and Coombs classification.

type III hypersensitivity

See Gell and Coombs classification.

type IV hypersensitivity

See Gell and Coombs classification.

tyrosine kinase

protein tyrosine kinase

Any member of a family of enzymes that phosphorylates target proteins on tyrosine residues, thus playing a crucial role in *signal transduction*.

Note: Tyrosine kinases play a key role in *lymphocyte activation*. Major tyrosine kinases involved in *T lymphocyte* activation are Lck, Fyn, and *ZAP-70*; those involved in *B lymphocyte* activation are Blk, Fyn, Lyn, and Syk.

After [7]

ubiquitin

Highly conserved 76 amino acid peptide abundant in eukaryotic cells. Its covalent attachment to a protein by a ubiquitin ligase complex targets that protein for destruction by the *proteasome*.

unresponsiveness (in immunology)

Inability to respond to an *antigen*ic stimulus.

Note: Unresponsiveness may be specific for a particular antigen (see *tolerance*), or broadly nonspecific as a result of damage to the entire *immune system*, for example, after whole-body irradiation.

After [7]

urticaria

See hives.

$V\alpha$ -J α rearrangement

Preferential partnering of J α gene segments with V α gene segments during rearrangement in the *T*-cell receptor (*TCR*) gene, possibly following deletion of the V δ gene region.

V(D)J recombination

Mechanism for generating antigen-specific receptors of T cells and B cells; it involves the joining of V, D, and J gene segments, mediated by the enzyme complex V(D)J recombinase, and products of the recombination-activating genes.

[7]

Note 1: The conventional syntax V(D)J indicates that V and J genes code the *light chain* and all three genes code the heavy chain, the processes being VJ and VDJ recombination, respectively.

Recombination occurs only once in a cell's lifetime. Note 2: See also somatic recombination.

V domain

See variable (V) region.

V gene See variable (V) gene.

V region See variable (V) region.

vaccination

Immunization with a vaccine against a pathogen.

vaccine

Preparation of an antigen intended to stimulate the immune system to render future tolerance, often of a weakened or killed pathogen, such as a bacterium or virus, or of a portion of the pathogen's structure. Upon administration the vaccine stimulates antibody production or cellular immunity against the pathogen but is incapable of causing severe infection.

See also attenuated vaccine, inactivated vaccine.

variable (V) domain

See variable (V) region.

variable (V) gene

Gene, segment(s) of which rearrange together with diversity (D) gene and joining (J) gene segments in order to encode the variable (V) region amino acid sequences of immunoglobulins (Ig) and T-cell receptors (TCRs).

[3] See also variable (V) region.

variable (V) region

N-terminal portion of an *immunoglobulin (Ig)* or *T-cell receptor (TCR)* that contains the *antigen*-binding region of the molecule. V regions are formed by the recombination of V(D) and J gene segments.

© 2012, IUPAC

The V region consists of two V domains, V_L and V_H .

[7]

See also *somatic recombination*, *V*(*D*)*J*-recombination.

vascular addressin

Note:

Cell *adhesion molecule* present on the luminal surface of blood and *lymph* vessel endothelium, recognized by *homing* molecules thatr direct *leukocytes* to tissues with the appropriate "address". [3]

vascular cell adhesion molecule (VCAM)

CD106

Molecule, expressed on the surface of endothelial cells that functions in the adhesion of *lymphocytes*, *monocytes*, *eosinophils*, and *basophils* to vascular endothelium to the vascular surface. See also *adhesion molecule*.

vasculitis

Group of disorders that share a common underlying problem of inflammation of a blood vessel or vessels.

Note: Vasculitis can lead to *necrosis*, fibrosis, or thrombosis. *Autoimmunity* plays an important role in some vasculitides (e.g., *ANCA-associated vasculitides*, *Goodpasture syndrome*, *cryoglobulinemic vasculitis*).

After [1]

vasoactive amine

Substance containing amino group(s) that increases vascular permeability and smooth muscle contraction. Examples are *histamine* and 5-hydroxytryptamine.

very early activating antigen

CD69

Specific antigen expressed on lymphocytes very soon after activation by phorbol myristate acetate (PMA).

very late activation antigen (VLA)

T-cell surface *antigen*, named for its delayed appearance after *T-cell* activation; a member of the *integrin superfamily* involved in cell adhesion.

vetoing

Elimination by *apoptosis* of a self-peptide-*major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule* recognizing *lymphocyte* by a self-peptide-presenting (veto) cell. After [1]

warm autoantibody type

Autoantibodies that react optimally at higher temperatures (37 °C) with surface antigens of erythrocytes. They mediate autoimmune hemolytic anemia. [1]

© 2012, IUPAC

Wegener granulomatosis (WG)

*Granuloma*tous *inflammation* involving the respiratory tract, and necrotizing *vasculitis* affecting small to medium-sized vessels (e.g., capillaries, venules, arterioles, and arteries).

Note: Necrotizing *glomerulonephritis* is common in WG.

[1]

western blotting

See immunoblotting.

wheal

Circumscribed papule or plaque of *edema* of the skin, occurring as an *urticarial* lesion. See also *hives*. After [9]

wheal and flare

Dermatological reaction at a skin site where an *antigen* is injected into an *allergic* individual. The reaction is characterized by a "flare" of *erythema* and a *wheal* produced by *serum* exuding into tissue, causing local *edema*.

white pulp

Collections of *lymphocytes* in the *spleen*, responsible for its *immune* function. See also *red pulp*.

Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome

eczema-thrombocytopenia-immunodeficiency syndrome

Condition characterized by chronic *eczema*, chronic suppurative otitis media, *anemia*, and *thrombocytopenic purpura* (accompanied by bloody diarrhea); it is an *immunodeficiency* syndrome transmitted as an X-linked recessive trait, in which there is poor *antibody* response to polysaccharide *antigens* and dysfunction of *cell-mediated immunity*.

After [18]

X-linked agammaglobulinemia

Bruton syndrome

Sex-linked impairment of the ability to produce *mature B cells*, thus characterized by recurrent infections.

X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency

Sex-linked trait carried on the X-chromosome of *severe combined immunodeficiency* syndrome resulting from nonfunctional *B lymphocytes* and lack of *T lymphocytes* and *natural killer (NK) lymphocytes*, leading to recurrent, persistent, and severe infections.

xenobiotic

Substance with a chemical structure foreign to a given organism.

Note: Frequently restricted to man-made substances.

[5]

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

xenogeneic

Exhibiting genetic differences between species. After [3]

xenograft

Tissue or organ *graft* between individuals of different species. [3]

xenophagy

Autophagy selective for degradation of intracellular bacteria and viruses.

Zeta chain (TCR)-associated protein kinase-70 kDa (ZAP-70A)

T-lymphocyte-specific tyrosine kinase involved in T-lymphocyte activation.

zymosan

Crude preparation of yeast cell walls, consisting chiefly of polysaccharide, activating the *alternative pathway* of the *complement system* in the presence of *properdin* and used in the immunoassay of this compound.

REFERENCES

- 1. IPCS. *Principles and Methods for Assessing Autoimmunity*, Environmental Health Criteria, Vol. 236, World Health Organization, Geneva (2006).
- K. Murphy, P. Travers, M. Walport, C. A. Janeway Jr. *Janeway's Immunobiology*, 7th ed., Garland Science, New York (2008).
- 3. P. J. Delves, S. Martin, D. Burton, I. Roitt. *Roitt's Essential Immunology*, 11th revised ed., John Wiley and Blackwell Publishing, Oxford (2006).
- 4. IPCS. Principles and Methods/Assessing Allergic Hypersensitization Associated with Exposure to Chemicals, Environmental Health Criteria, Vol. 212, World Health Organization, Geneva (1999).
- 5. J. H. Duffus, M. Nordberg, D. M. Templeton. Pure Appl. Chem. 79, 1153 (2007).
- 6. I. R. Edwards, A. K. Aronson. Lancet 356, 1255 (2000).
- 7. E. Benjamini, R. Coico, G. Sunshine. *Immunology, A Short Course*, 4th ed., Wiley-Interscience, Oxford (2000).
- P. T. Thomas, R. V. House. "Preclinical immunotoxicity assessment", in *CRC Handbook of Toxicology*, M. J. Derelanko, M. A. Hollinger (Eds.), Chap. 7, pp. 293–316, CRC Press, Boca Raton (1995).
- 9. Stedman's Medical Dictionary, 28th revised ed., Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore (2006).
- 10. R. D. Cummings, R. P. McEver. "C-type lectins", in *Essentials in Glycobiology*, 2nd ed., A. Varki et al. (Eds.), Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press (2009).
- 11. *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed., Houghton Mifflin, Boston (2000).
- E. Lubberts, L. A. B. Joosten, M. Chabaud, L. van den Bersselaar, B. Oppers, C. J. J. Coenen-de Roo, C. D. Richards, P. Miossec, W. B. van den Berg. J. Clin. Invest. 105, 1697 (2000).
- 13. K. L. Rock, L. Shen. Immunol. Rev. 207, 166 (2005).
- 14. R. A. Goldsby, T. J. Kindt, J. Kuby, B. A. Osborne. *Immunology*, 5th ed., W. H. Freeman, New York (2003).

- 15. S. P. Parker (Ed.). *McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms*, 6th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York (2002).
- 16. W. E. Paul. *Fundamental Immunology*, 6th ed., Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, Wolters Kluwer, Philadelphia (2008).
- 17. J. Lackie. A Dictionary of Biomedicine, Oxford University Press (2010).
- National Research Council, Committee on Biological Markers, Subcommittee on Immunotoxicology. *Biological Markers in Immunotoxicology*, National Academy Press, Washington, DC (1992).
- 19. V. Kumar, A. K. Abbas, N. Fausto. *Robbins and Cotran: Pathologic Basis of Disease*, 7th ed., Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia (2005).
- 20. R. C. King, W. D. Stansfield, P. K. Mulligan. A Dictionary of Genetics, Oxford University Press (2007).
- 21. WHO. Immunotoxicity Associated with Exposure to Chemicals, Principles and Methods for Assessment, Environmental Health Criteria, Vol. 180, International Programme on Chemical Safety, World Health Organization, Geneva (1996).
- H. Yanai, T. Ba, M. K. Choi, T. Kawamura, H. Negishi, M. Nakasato, Y. Lu, S. Hangai, R. Koshiba, D. Savitsky, L. Ronfani, S. Akira, M. E. Bianchi, K. Honda, T. Tamura, T. Kodama, T. Taniguchi. *Nature* 462, 99 (2009).
- 23. A. Sjolander, J. C. Cox, I. G. Barr. J. Leukocyte Biol. 64, 713 (1998).
- 24. H. Waldmann, E. Adams, P. Fairchild, S. Cobbold. Immunol. Rev. 212, 301 (2006).
- 25. F. Martinon, K. Burns, J. Tschopp. Mol. Cell 10, 417 (2002).
- 26. R. Cammack, T. Atwood, P. Campbell, H. Parish, A. Smith, F. Vella, J. Stirling (Eds.). *The Oxford Dictionary of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*, Oxford University Press (2008).
- 27. P. Rosenstiel, A. Till, S. Schreiber. Microbes Infect. 9, 648 (2007).
- 28. E. Martin, R. Hine. A Dictionary of Biology, Oxford University Press (2008).
- 29. F. Melchers, H. Karasuyama, D. Haasner, S. Bauer, A. Kudo, N. Sakaguchi, B. Jameson, A. Rolink. *Immunol. Today* 14 (1993).
- 30. N. H. Shomer, J. G. Fox, A. E. Juedes, N. H. Ruddle. Infect. Immun. 71, 3572 (2003).

Republication or reproduction of this report or its storage and/or dissemination by electronic means is permitted without the need for formal IUPAC permission on condition that an acknowledgment, with full reference to the source, along with use of the copyright symbol ©, the name IUPAC, and the year of publication, are prominently visible. Publication of a translation into another language is subject to the additional condition of prior approval from the relevant IUPAC National Adhering Organization.

ANNEX I: ABBREVIATIONS

AAE	acquired angioedema		
ACA	anticentromere antibody		
ADA	adenosine deaminase		
ADAM family protein	A disintegrin and metalloproteinase domain family protein		
ADCC	antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity		
AFP	α-fetoprotein		
AID	activation-induced cytidine deaminase		
AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome		
AIH	autoimmune hepatitis		
AIRE	autoimmune regulator		
ALL	acute lymphoblastic (lymphocytic) leukemia		
AMA	antimitochondrial antibody		
AML	acute myelogenous leukemia		
ANA	antinuclear antibody		
ANCA	antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody		
ANF	antinuclear factor		
APC	antigen-presenting cell		
APECED syndrome	autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal-dystrophy syn-		
2	drome		
APR	acute-phase response		
APS	antiphospholipid syndrome		
ARDS	acute (or adult) respiratory distress syndrome		
ASA test	active systemic anaphylaxis test		
AT	ataxia telangiectasia		
ATM	ataxia telangiectasia-mutated		
AZT	azidothymidine		
BALT	bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue		
BCG	bacille Calmette–Guérin		
BCR	B-cell receptor		
BCR gene	breakpoint cluster region gene		
BLIMP-1	B-lymphocyte-induced maturation protein 1		
BLNK	B-cell linker protein		
BSF	B-cell stimulatory factor		
CALT	conjunctiva-associated lymphoid tissue		
CD	(i) cluster of differentiation, (ii) cluster determinant		
CD40L	CD40 ligand		
CDR	complementarity-determining region		
CEA	carcinoembryonic antigen		
CGD	chronic granulomatous disease		
CLA	cutaneous lymphocyte antigen		
CLL	chronic lymphocytic leukemia		
СМА	chaperone-mediated autophagy		
CMI	cell-mediated immunity		
CML	chronic myelogenous leukemia		
CMV	cytomegalovirus		
ConA	concanavalin A		
CRA	cvtokine release assav		
cRBC	chicken red blood cell		

© 2012, IUPAC

CREST	calcinosis, Raynaud phenomenon, esophageal dysfunction, sclerodactyly,			
	and telangiectasias			
CRP	C-reactive protein			
CSF	colony-stimulating factor			
CTL	cytotoxic T lymphocyte			
CTLA-4	cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4			
DAF	decay-accelerating factor			
DAT	direct antiglobulin test			
DDT	dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane			
DTH assay	delayed-type hypersensitivity assay			
EAE	experimental allergic encephalomyelitis			
EBV	Epstein–Barr virus			
ECF-A	eosinophil chemotactic factor of anaphylaxis			
EGF	epidermal growth factor			
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay			
ELISPOT assay	enzyme-linked immunospot assay			
Erk	extracellular regulated kinase			
ESL	embryonic stem cell			
FACS	fluorescence-assisted (or activated) cell sorting			
FCAS	familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome			
FHL	familial hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis			
FITC	fluorescein isothiocvanate			
fMLP	formvl-methionvl-leucvl-phenvlalanine			
GABAergic neurons	γ-aminobutvric acid-responsive neurons			
GAD	glutamic acid decarboxylase			
GALT	gut-associated lymphoid tissue			
GBS	Guillain–Barré syndrome			
G-CSF	granulocyte colony-stimulating factor			
GM-CSF	granulocyte entry stimulating factor			
GPMT	guinea nig maximization test			
GVH	graft-versus-host			
GVHD	graft-versus-host disease			
HAART	highly active antiretroviral therapy			
HAE	hereditary angioedema			
HEV	high endothelial venule			
HIGM	hyper immunoglobulin M syndrome			
HIT	henarin-induced thrombocytonenia			
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus			
НІ А	human leukocyte antigen			
HMGB protein	high-mobility group box protein			
HMI	nign-modility group box protein			
HDS	numorally mediated immunity			
Ins	nypersensitivity pneumonitis			
	indiract antiglobulin test			
	indirect antiglobulin test			
	inflammatory bowel disease			
	intercallular adhasian malacula			
ICAWI	intercential addesion molecule			
	inducible on stimulatory protoin			
	licend of inducible op stimulatory protein			
ICOSL	ingand of inductore co-sumulatory protein (LICOS)			

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

IDDM	insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus		
IDO	indolamine-2,3-dioxygenase		
IDR	idiosyncratic drug reaction		
IEL	intraepithelial lymphocyte		
IFN-γ	interferon gamma		
Ig	immunoglobulin		
IL	interleukin		
IPAF	interleukin-1 β converting enzyme (ICE) protease-activating factor		
IPEX	immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy. X-linked		
ISCOM	immunostimulating complex		
ITAM	immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif		
ITIM	immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif		
ITP	idiopathic (or immune) thrombocytopenic purpura		
IVCCA	in vivo cytokine capture assay		
JAK	Janus-family tyrosine kinase		
JAM test	"just another method" test		
JNK	c-Jun protein kinase		
KAR	killer activatory receptor		
K cell	killer cell		
KIR	killer inhibitory receptor, killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor		
KLH	kevhole limpet hemocyanin		
KLR	killer lectin-like receptor		
KS	Kaposi sarcoma		
LAK	lymphokine- (lymphocyte-) activated killer cells		
LALT	larvnx-associated lymphoid tissue		
LBA	lymphocyte blastogenesis assay		
LCA	leukocyte common antigen		
LDL	low-density lipoprotein		
LEMS	Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome		
LFA	leukocyte functional antigens		
LFA-1	lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1		
LGL	large granular lymphocyte		
LPT	lymphocyte proliferation test		
LICOS	ligand of inducible co-stimulatory protein		
LKM	liver-kidney microsomal antibody		
LLNA	(murine) local lymph node assay		
LPS	lipopolysaccharide		
LRR	leucine-rich reneat		
LT	lymphotoxin		
LTT	TymphotoxIII Tymphocyte transformation test		
M cell	nymphocyte transformation test microfold cell		
Mah	monoclonal antibody		
MAC	monocional antibody		
MAdCAM-1	mucosal addressin cell adhesion molecule-1		
MALT	mucosa associated lymphoid tissue		
MAPC	mucosa-associated lymphoid ussue multipotent adult progenitor cell		
МАРК	multipotent adult progenitor cen mitogen activated protain kinase		
MASP	minogen-activated protein kinase		
	ated serine protease		
MBI	mannose-binding lectin		
MDL	mannose-omunig recun		

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

MBP	mannose-binding protein		
MCAD (MCAS)	mast cell activation disorder (syndrome)		
MCS	multiple chemical sensitivity		
MCTD	mixed connective tissue disease		
MEST	mouse ear-swelling test		
MHC	major histocompatibility complex		
MIGET	mouse IgE test		
MLR	mixed lymphocyte response/reaction		
MMR	macrophage mannose receptor		
MPA	microscopic polyangiitis		
MPO	myeloperoxidase		
MPS	mononuclear phagocytic system		
mTOR	mammalian target of rapamycin		
MTX	methotrexate		
NAA	natural autoantibodies		
NACHT domain	(protein domain derived from several other acromyms not included in this		
	glossary, namely, NAIP, CIITA, HET-E, and TP1)		
NALP3	NACHT domain-, leucine-rich repeat-, and PYD-containing protein 3 (same		
	as NLRP3)		
NALT	nasal-associated lymphoid tissue		
NFAT	nuclear factor of activated T cells		
NK cell	natural killer cell		
NKT cell	cell-type intermediate between an NK cell and a T lymphocyte		
NLR(P)	NOD-like receptor (protein) or nucleotide-binding domain, leucine-rich		
	repeat-containing protein		
NLRP3	NOD-like receptor protein 3 (same as NALP3)		
NOD	nucleotide-binding oligomerization domain-containing protein		
NOD mouse	non-obese diabetic mouse		
NRAMP	natural resistance-associated macrophage protein		
NRL allergen	natural rubber latex allergen		
NSAID	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug		
PAF	platelet-activating factor		
PALS	periarteriolar lymphoid sheath		
PAMP	pathogen-associated molecular pattern		
PBC	primary biliary cirrhosis		
PBL	peripheral blood leukocyte <i>also</i> peripheral blood lymphocyte		
PBMC	peripheral blood mononuclear cell		
PCA test	nassive cutaneous anaphylaxis test		
PCB	polychlorinated biphenyl		
PCDD	polychlorinated dibenzodioxin		
PCDF	polychlorinated dibenzofuran		
PDGF	polychionilated dibelizoidiali platelet_derived growth factor		
PF	platelet factor		
PFC	place forming cell		
РНА	phaque-torning con nbytohemagalutinin		
PKC	protein kinase C		
PLC-v	protein Killase C		
PLNA	phospholipase Uy		
PMA	popular rymph noue assay phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate (same as TPA)		
PPD	nurified protein derivative		
	Parmea protein derivative		

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Glossary of terms used in immunotoxicology

PR3	proteinase 3		
pre-BCR	pre-B cell receptor		
PRR	pattern recognition receptor		
PSC	primary sclerosing cholangitis		
PWM	pokeweed mitogen		
PYD	pyrin (N-terminal homology) domain		
RA	rheumatoid arthritis		
RADS	reactive airways dysfunction syndrome		
RAG	recombination-activating gene		
RANTES	regulated upon activation normal T-cell expressed and secreted		
RARF	Ra-reactive factor		
RAST	radioallergosorbent test		
RES	reticuloendothelial system		
RIA	radioimmunoassav		
ROI	reactive oxygen intermediates		
ROS	reactive oxygen species		
RSS	recombination signal sequence		
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus		
SALT	skin-associated lymphoid tissue		
SAPK	stress-activated protein kinase		
SAT	spontaneous autoimmune thyroiditis		
SCA	single_chain antibody		
SCID	severe combined immunodeficiency		
SCLE	subacute cutaneous lunus erythematosus		
SHM	somatic hypermutation		
SIGAD	solactive immunoglobulin A deficiency		
SIGNEC	selective immunoglobulin A deficiency		
SIGLEC	signaling lectins		
	skin minune system		
SLA	soluble liver antigen		
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosis		
SMAC	supramolecular adhesion complex		
SNP	single-nucleoude polymorphism		
SOC protein	small outer capsid protein		
SKBC	sheep red blood cell		
SSC	systemic scierosis		
SIAI	signal transducer and activator of transcription		
TAP	transporter associated with antigen processing		
TCDD	2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzodioxin		
TCDO	tetrachlorodecaoxide		
TCR	T-cell receptor		
TD antigen	thymus-dependent antigen		
TDAR	T-cell-dependent antibody response		
	terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase		
TEN	toxic epidermal necrolysis		
TG	thyroglobulin		
TGF-β	transforming growth factor beta		
TIL	tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte		
TLR	toll-like receptor		
TNF	tumor necrosis factor		
TPA	tetradecanoyl phorbol acetate (same as PMA)		

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

TPO	thyroid peroxidase		
TRA	tumor rejection antigen		
TRAF	TNF receptor-associated factor		
TSHR	thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor		
TSTA	tumor-specific transplantation antigen		
tTG	tissue transglutaminase		
TUNEL	TdT-dependent dUTP-biotin nick end labeling		
UGT	uridine diphosphate (UDP)-glucuronosyltransferase		
VCAM	vascular cell adhesion molecule		
VLA	very late activation antigen		
WG	Wegener granulomatosis		
ZAP-70	zeta chain (TCR)-associated protein kinase-70 kDa		

ANNEX II: LIST OF CHEMICALS WITH KNOWN EFFECTS ON THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

Major sources used for compiliation of the list were:

- IPCS. Immunotoxicity Associated with Exposure to Chemicals, Principles and Methods for Assessment, Environmental Health Criteria, Vol. 180, World Health Organization, Geneva (1996).
- IPCS. Principles and Methods/Assessing Allergic Hypersensitization Associated with Exposure to Chemicals, Environmental Health Criteria, Vol. 212, World Health Organization, Geneva (1999).
- IPCS. *Principles and Methods for Assessing Autoimmunity*, Environmental Health Criteria. Vol. 236, World Health Organization, Geneva (2006).
- N. E. Kaminski, B. L. Faubert Kaplan, M. P. Holsapple. "Toxic responses of the immune system", in *Casarett and Doull's Toxicology*, 7th ed., C. D. Klaassen (Ed.) McGraw-Hill, New York (2008).
- W. J. Pichler (Ed.). Drug Hypersensitivity, Karger, Basel (2007).

A. Pesticides

carbaryl

Insecticide associated with alterations of immunoglobulin levels.

malathion

Insecticide exhibiting both immunosuppressive and enhancing effects.

organotins

Compounds such as the antifouling agent tributyltin, dioctyltindichloride, and dioctyltindichloride that act on maturing and proliferating T lymphocytes. They are considered prototypes of immunosuppressive chemical agents.

parathion

Insecticide that suppresses the humoral and cell-mediated immune response.

1,1,1-trichloro-2,2-bis(4-chlorophenyl)ethane

dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) Insecticide associated with suppression of various types of inconsistent immune responses.

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

B. Environmental contaminants

hexachlorobenzene

Formerly used pesticide causing increased weight of lymphatic organs and various other immunotoxic effects in rodents.

polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)

Chemicals, formerly widely used in technology (e.g., in transformer fluids), congeners of which are immunosuppressive to various degrees, reducing thymus weight and antibody-formation in experimental animals.

polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDFs)

Environmental agents whose immunotoxic profile is similar to that of polychlorinated dibenzodioxins. See also polychlorinated biphenyls.

polychlorinated dibenzodioxins (PCDDs)

Products of incomplete incineration and contaminants in 2,4,5-T (formerly widely used as a herbicide and notoriuously as Agent Orange in the Vietnam War), 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzodioxin (TCDD) is the most toxic representative of this group of chemicals. It causes *thymic* atrophy and suppression of cell-mediated immunity in rodents.

See also *chloracne* in alphabetical entries.

polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons

Chemicals released during combustion of fossil fuels, including benzopyrene, 7,12-dimethylbenzanthracene, and 3-methylcholanthrene, that suppress humoral and cellular immunity.

C. Industrial chemicals

acid anhydrides

Group of reactive chemicals that tend to induce hypersensitivity reactions, such as dermatitis.

benzene

Organic solvent that is toxic to the bone marrow and suppresses lymphocytes.

bisphenol A

Plasticizer with possibly effects on the immune system via an estrogen-receptor-dependent mechanism.

formaldehyde

Highly reactive substance that is an allergen in humans and can potentiate the allergenic effect of other substances.

polyisocyanates

Group of reactive chemicals used in paints, which may induce asthma-like symptoms in isocyanate workers, probably by forming neoantigens.

silica

Inhaled dust particles of silica are toxic to lung macrophages and may depress immune parameters.

vinyl chloride

Monomer for polyvinyl chloride (PVC) production, which may cause a scleroderma-like syndrome.

D. Drugs

D1. With adverse effects

ampicillin

Antibiotic, often accompanied by exanthema, which is potentiated by cytomegalus virus or mononucleosis infection.

carbamazepine

Antiepileptic drug that may cause delayed-type hypersensitivity, leading to a variety of hypersensitivity reactions including life-threatening skin reactions (Stevens–Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis).

halothane

Inhalational anesthetic that may cause autoimmune and allergic hepatitis due to formation of neoantigen.

hydralazine

Hypotensive drug that may cause autoimmunity, manifested as systemic lupus erythematosus-like syndrome.

α -methyldopa

Hypotensive drug that may induce autoimmune reactions including hemolytic anemia and autoimmune hepatitis.

paclitaxel

Anticancer drug extracted from the Pacific yew tree, which influences microtubule dynamics, causing bone marrow suppression and thrombocytopenia.

penicillamine

Therapeutic chelating agent used to eliminate toxic metals such as in treatment of copper overload, but may also cause autoimmune disease such as myositis.

phenytoin

Antiepileptic drug that can cause a range of hypersensitivity reactions, similar to those caused by carbamazepine. If a patient has a hypersensitivity reaction to one they are likely to have a similar reaction to the other.

procainamide

Antiarrhythmic drug that induces autoimmune disease, manifested as systemic lupus erythematosuslike syndrome.

propylthiouracil

Drug used to treat hyperthyroidism that may induce hypersensitivity reactions, leading to agranulocytosis, hepatitis, or a lupus-like syndrome.

sulfamethoxazole

Antibiotic that may cause hypersensitivity reactions.

D2. Immunomodulating

ascomycin, immunomycin, FK 520

Ethyl analogue of tacrolimus that inhibits degranulation of mast cells, acting mainly in the skin. See also tacrolimus.

antihistamine, histamine-1 receptor antagonist

Drug that blocks a histamine receptor on cell surfaces, thereby counteracting the signal-transducing effects of histamine. In immunotherapy, antihistamine drugs are used to suppress the effects of immunoglobulin E (IgE)-induced histamine release from mast cells in various forms of allergy and inflammation.

azathioprine

6-[(1-methyl-4-nitro-1H-imidazol-5-yl)sulfanyl]-7H-purine

Immunosuppressant prodrug that is metabolized to an active species (mercaptopurine), used in organ transplantation and autoimmune diseases.

azidothymidine (AZT), ziduvurine

Thymidine analogue, which inhibits the reverse transcriptase of human immunodeficiency virus and increases the number of circulating CD4+ cells in patients.

cyclophosphamide

Alkylating agent with immunosuppressive features, used to treat some autoimmune diseases.

cyclosporin A

T-cell-specific immunosuppressive drug that binds to cyclophillin, inhibiting the production of IL-2. Used to prevent graft rejection and in the treatment of some autoimmune diseases.

dexamethasone

Corticosteroid that relieves inflammation (swelling, heat, redness, and pain) and is used to treat certain forms of arthritis; skin, blood, kidney, eye, thyroid, and intestinal disorders (e.g., colitis); severe allergies; and asthma. Dexamethasone is also used to treat certain types of cancer.

filgrastim

Analogue of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) pharmacologically used to stimulate the proliferation and differentiation of granulocytes.

fingolimod, FTY720

Sphingosine-1-phosphate analog, derived from the fungal product myriocin that inhibits migration of lymphocytes and dendritic cells.

FK-506 See tacrolimus.

immunocyanin

Immune stimulating drug derived from keyhole limpet hemocyanin (KLH).

ImmunokineTM

Commercial preparation of diluted tetrachlorodecaoxide (TCDO). See tetrachlorodecaoxide (TCDO).

keyhole limpet hemocyanin (KLH)

Large (8–32 MDa) multisubunit oxygen-transporting mollusc protein, used to stimulate immune response (cellular and humoral). Also used as a carrier protein for haptens and in immunotherapy of bladder cancer. Smaller subunits are also used (e.g., immunocyanin).

methoxsalen

xanthotoxin

Herbal furanocumarin with photosensitizing properties leading to dermatitis after skin contact. Also used for photochemotherapy of psoriasis.

methotrexate (MTX)

Antimetabolite and antifolate drug used in treatment of cancer and autoimmune diseases.

mycophenolate

Immunosuppressant drug used to prevent rejection in organ transplantation and in treatment of autoimmune disease.

nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

Synthetic pharmaceuticals commonly used to treat inflammation and pain of musculoskeletal disorders. These drugs act by inhibiting cyclooxygenase, a key enzyme in prostaglandin synthesis. Common NSAIDs are acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin), indomethacin, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

NSAIDs may have immunologically relevant adverse effects such as bone marrow depression, aspirin-induced asthma or "salicylate intolerance", a pseudoallergic reaction.

pimecrolimus

Drug structurally related to tacrolimus (fujimycin), which inhibits T-cell activation. It is used for treatment of atopic dermatitis and psoriasis.

© 2012, IUPAC

prednisone

17,21-dihydroxypregna-1,4-diene-3,11,20-trione

Synthetic steroid with glucocorticoid action that is used as an antiallergy and immunosuppressive drug and as an anti-inflammatory agent in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis (RA).

rapamycin

sirolimus

Immunosuppressive drug commonly used after organ transplantation to decrease the risk of rejection.

sirolimus

See rapamycin.

tacrolimus

FK-506

fujimycin

Immunosuppressive drug commonly used after allogenic organ transplantation to decrease the risk of rejection. It inactivates T lymphocytes by inhibiting signal transduction from the T-cell receptor (TCR). Although its target (FK-506 binding protein) is different than that of cyclosporin, it inhibits the same pathway and has similar effects on the immune system.

tetrachlorodecaoxide (TCDO)

Chlorite-containing drug used for the dressing of wounds, immunomodulation, and as a protective agent against radiation. It forms a complex with hemoglobin and stimulates macrophages.

vitamin D3

Physiological form of vitamin D that suppresses Th1 cytokines and increases Th2 cytokines.

voclosporin

Immunosuppressive drug that acts as a calcineurin inhibitor.

E. Metals and metalloids

arsenic

Semimetal that is either immunostimulating or immunosuppressing, depending on the chemical species and condition.

beryllium

Metal that, depending on its speciation, upon chronic inhalation at the workplace, may induce "chronic beryllium disease", a severe and persistent hypersensitivity reaction of the airways.

cadmium

Metal of both occupational and environmental importance that, depending on its speciation, has immunostimulating and immunosuppressive effects.

chromium

Metal that, depending on its speciation, may induce hypersensitivity reactions (e.g., chromium eczema).

cobalt

Metal that, depending on its speciation, induces allergic contact dermatitis.

lead

Metal that, depending on its speciation, is immunosuppressive and decreases resistence to infections in rodents.

mercury

Mercury chloride induces autoantibodies and autoimmune disease in sensitive rat strains. Mercury compounds are also immunosuppressive. The organomercury compound thimerosal is a classical preservative in vaccines.

nickel

Metal which is a common contact sensitizer in the general population.

platinum

Platinum salts induce hypersensitivity reactions such as contact dermatitis and respiratory symptoms. Cis-platin, a cytostatic compound, inhibits rapidly proliferating B cells and T cells.

F. Miscellaneous

aflatoxin B1, mycotoxin

Potent carcinogenic compound produced by fungi, which causes suppression of antibody response, probably related to its metabolic bioactivation.

enzymes, proteolytic

Proteins that, when airborne, have the potential of any protein to cause hypersensitivity reactions (such as conjunctivitis, rhinitis, or asthma), but may cause additional tissue damage due to proteolysis.

mitomycin C

[(4S,6S,7R,8S)-11-amino-7-methoxy-12-methyl-10,13-dioxo-2,5-diazatetracyclo[7.4.0.02,7.04,6]trideca-1(9),11-dien-8-yl]methyl carbamate

One of a family of antibiotics produced by <u>Streptomyces caespitosus</u> and used as an anti-tumor agent. It may cause pancytopenia.

oxidant gases

Ozone and nitrogen oxides, when inhaled, impair functions of alveolar macrophages and augment pulmonary allergic reactions.

sulfite

Food additive that may cause a pseudoallergic reaction (sulfite-intolerance) in sensitive individuals.

© 2012, IUPAC

ANNEX III: SOME MOST RELEVANT AUTOANTIBODIES IN AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE

Target organ/system	Diagnosis	Autoantibody specificity
Endocrine system		
Thyroid	Hashimoto thyroiditis	Thyroperoxidase (microsomal antigen, 107 kDa)
	Primary myxedema (atrophic thyroiditis)	Thyroglobulin (conformation specific)
	Endocrine ophthalmopathia	Thyroglobulin, acetylcholine esterase
	Basedow disease	Extracellular domain of the receptor for thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)
Pancreas	Diabetes mellitus type 1, Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy	Insulin-producing β-cells of the Langerhans islets Glutamate decarboxylase (GAD 65 and 67) Insulin Protein IA2 (ICA512/40 kDa) and IAβ (Phogrin/37 kDa) Surface of islet cells
Adrenal cortex	Addison disease, Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy type 2	Microsomes of the adrenal cortex: 21-hydroxylase
	Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy type 1	17-α-hydroxylase
Parathyroid gland	Hypoparathyroidism	Cells of the parathyroid, parathormone
Pituitary gland	Insufficiency of pituitary, Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy	Corticotropin, prolactin, growth hormone, steroid-hormone-producing cells
Hypothalamus	Diabetes insipidus, polyendocrinopathy	Vasopressin-producing cells
Hematological system		
Erythrocytes	Hemolytic anemia	Rh-system
	Cold agglutination syndrome	Blood group substance I
	Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria	Blood group substance P
Thrombocytes	Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) Autoimmune thrombocytopenia (AITP)	GP Iib/IIIa (125, 95 kDa), Ib/IX (135/25 kDa and 22 kDa) and V (82 kDa)

a. Autoantibodies in organ-specific autoimmune disorders

© 2012, IUPAC

Granulocytes	Agranulocytosis	 Membrane of granulocytes; NA1/NA2 (Fc receptor type III), NB1 (58 to 64 kDa glycoprotein) Neutrophilic adhesion glycoprotein complex CD11b/CD18 (CR3, Mac-1, αm:β2 integrin) TSH receptor-like antigen
Gastrointestinal tract		
Stomach	Chronic atrophic gastritis, Pernicious anemia	Parietal cells
	Funicular myelosis	Intrinsic factor H^+/K^+ ATPase α - and β -subunit
Gut	Crohn disease	Pancreas secret Colonic epithelial cells (40 kDa protein) Neutrophils (pANCA)
	Ulcerative colitis	Neutrophils (pANCA)
	Sprue/celiac disease	(Gliadin) Endomysium Reticulin Tissue-transglutaminase
Liver	Autoimmune hepatitis	Nuclei (DNA-histone) (ANA) Smooth muscle antigens (actin) (SMA) Soluble liver/liver-pancreas antigen (LP/SLA) UGD tRNA associated protein Liver-kidney microsomes (cytochrome P450IID6) (LKM1) Liver-membrane antigen (LMA; 26 kDa) Asialoglycoprotein receptor protein (AGPRP)
	Primary biliary cirrhosis	<u>Mitochondria:</u> M2 (subunits of the 2-oxoacid dehydrogenase complex: 70, 56, 52, 45, 36 kDa) <u>Nuclei:</u> Nuclear dots (sp100) Nuclear membrane (gp210) Centromeres
	Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC)	Neutrophils (pANCA)
Other organs		
Heart	Dilative cardiomyopathy	Sarcolemma, myolemma Mitochondria (M7: FAD-part of flavoenzymes) ADP/ATP nucleotide translocator Calcium channels β-Adrenoreceptor
	Cardiac infarction	Phospholipids

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

	Atherosclerosis	Oxidized "low-density lipoprotein" (LDL)
Kidney	Idiopathic necrotizing glomerulonephritis	Neutrophils (pANCA: myeloperoxidase)
	Collagen disorders	Nuclei (ANA; see collagen disorders)
	Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis	C1q
Kidney/lung	Goodpasture syndrome	Glomerular basement membrane (α3 chain of type IV collagen)
Muscle	Myasthenia gravis	Acetylcholine receptor
	Myositis	Nuclei (ANA; see collagen disorders)
Skin	Pemphigus vulgaris	Desmosomes (desmoglein 3: 130 kDa)
	Pemphigus foliaceus	Desmosomes (desmoglein 1: 160 kDa; plakoglobin: 85 kDa)
	Bullous pemphigoid	Hemidesmosomes, BP 230 (BPAG1: intracellular part of hemidesmosomes) and BP 180 (BPAG2: extracellular part), junction of epidermal cells
	Dermatitis herpetiformis	Dermal-epidermal junctions Jejunal mucosa, reticulin
	Epidermiolysis bullosa acquisita	Type VII collagen
	Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Systemic sclerosis (SSc), Dermatomyositis	Nuclei (ANA; see collagen disorders)
Central nervous system	Polyneuropathy	Gangliosides
	Guillain–Barré syndrome (GBS)	Gm1
	Neuropsychiatric SLE	CNS-tissue, neuronal structures, phospholipids
	Cerebral vasculitis	CNS-tissue, neuronal structures, phospholipids
	Cerebral infarction	Phospholipids
	Rasmussen encephalitis	Glutamate receptor
	Functional somatic syndromes (fibromyalgia, chronic fatigue, etc.)	Neurotransmitter (i.e., serotonin)
	Funicular myelosis	Intrinsic factor
	Encephalomyelitis disseminata	Myelin basic protein

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

	Schizophrenia	Perinuclear structures of neurons
	Alzheimer disease	Perinuclear structures of microglial cells
	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	Ca ²⁺ -channel (L-type)
	Paraneoplastic polyneuropathies	Neuronal and nuclear antigens
Eye	Primary uveitis, keratitis	Epithelial cells of the cornea, lens proteins/crystallins, retinal antigens (retinal-S-protein, rhodopsin, opsin, interphotoreceptor-retinoid-binding protein)
Ear	Sensorineural hearing loss, tinnitus	Structures of the inner ear, nuclei, cytoskeletal antigens

b. Autoantibodies in systemic autoimmune disorders

Disorders	Autoantibody specificity	Target antigen
Collagen disorders		
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)	Nuclei (ANA)	Different nuclear antigens
	dsDNA	Double-stranded DNA
	ssDNA	Single-stranded DNA
	Sm	Small nuclear ribonucleoprotein particles (snRNP) MW 29, 28, 16, 13 kDa
	SSA/Ro	Ribonucleoprotein-containing uridine-rich nucleic acid [hY(human cytoplasmic)1, hY3, hY4, hY5]; most important proteins: MW 60, 52 kDa
	Lamin B	Nuclear membrane protein, 70 kDa
	M5	Mitochondrial protein
	Heat shock proteins	90 kDa
	CNS-tissue	Target antigens unknown (α -tubulin and others)
	Ribosomal P protein	Ribosomal phosphoproteins P0, P1, P2
	Phospholipids	Cardiolipin, phosphatidylserine, β2-glycoptotein, annexin
	Thrombocytes	Target antigen unknown
	Erythrocytes	Rh-system, blood group substances

Mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)	RNP	Ribonucleoprotein complex with U1snRNA (70, 33, 20 kDa)
Primary Sjögren disease	SSA/Ro	See under SLE; 60, 52 kDa, associated with cytoplasmic hYRNA subunits
	SSB/La	Phosphoprotein (48 kDa), associated with different small RNAs
	Rheumatoid factor	IgG Fc-region
Progressive systemic sclerosis (SSc)	Scl 70	Topoisomerase I: 100 kDa protein, 70 kDa after denaturation
	Nucleoli	RNA-polymerase I, PM-Scl (11–16 proteins), sno (small nucleolar) RNP (i.e. fibrillarin), nucleolus organizing region (NOR) 90
	Centromeres	CENP-A, -B, -C
Poly/dermatomyositis	Aminoacetyl-tRNA synthet	ases
	Jo-1	Histidyl-tRNA-synthetase (50 kDa)
	PL-7	Threonyl-tRNA-synthetase (80 kDa)
	PL-12	Alanyl-tRNA-synthetase (110 kDa)
	EJ	Glycyl-tRNA-synthetase (75 kDa)
	OJ	Isoleucyl-tRNA-synthetase (150 kDa)
	KJ	Protein in the transcription process
	SRP	Signal recognition particle
	Nuclear antigens	
	PM-Scl	Antigen in the nucleolus, consistent of 11–16 proteins with MW 20–110 kDa)
	Mi-2	Antigen consistent of 6 proteins
	U1-RNP	70, 33, 22 kDa proteins of U1-snRNP
	Ku	DNS-binding proteins, MW 70 and 80-86 kDa
Rheumatoid arthritis	Nuclei	Antigen not known
	Rheumatoid factor	IgG, Fc-part
	ССР	Cyclic citrullinated peptide
	hsp	Heat shock proteins
	RA33 (hnRNP-complex)	Heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein- complex (30 proteins)

Wegener disease (WG)	cANCA	Antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies, cytoplasmic staining (proteinase 3)
Leukocytoclastic vasculitis	cANCA	Antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies, cytoplasmic staining (proteinase 3)
	pANCA	Antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies, perinuclear staining (myeloperoxidase)
Microscopic angiitis	pANCA	Antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies, perinuclear staining (myeloperoxidase)
Churg–Strauss	cANCA	See above
syndrome	pANCA	See above
Antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)	Phospholipids, lupus anticoagulant	See above (cardiolipin, phosphatidylserine, β2-glycoprotein, annexin and others)
Autoimmune angioed	lema	
Autoimmune angioedema	C1-inhibitor	C1-inhibitor

Vasculitis

ANNEX IV: THERAPEUTIC AGENTS (MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES OR FUSION PROTEINS) FOR HUMAN AUTOIMMUNE DISORDERS AND TUMORS

Target class	Molecular target	Therapeutic agent	Name	Disease
Adhesion molecules	Integrin α4β7	mAb humanized	Vedolizumab	Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)
		mAb humanized	Etrolizumab	IBD
	Integrin α4β1 and α4β7	mAb humanized	Natalizumab	Relapsing/remitting multiple sclerosis (MS), rheumatoid arthritis (RA)
	ICAM-1	mAb murine	Enlimomab	RA, stroke
		20 base-pair nucleotide chain hybridizing with ICAM-1 mRNA and reducing ICAM-1 expression	ISIS-2301 (Alicaforsen)	IBD
	Vascular adhesion protein-1 (VAP-1; amine oxidase, copper containing 3; semicarbazide- sensitive amine oxidase)	mAb murine	Vapalimomab	Inflammatory diseases
B cells	B-cell activating factor (BAFF)	mAb human	Belimumab	Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
	BAFF and APRIL (proliferation induced ligand)	Fusion protein binding to BAFF and APRIL	Atacicept	SLE, MS
	CD20	mAb, chimeric (mouse/human)	Rituximab	RA, SLE, MS
		mAb humanized	Ocrelizumab	RA, SLE, MS
		mAb human	Ofatumumab	RA, MS
	CD22	mAb humanized	Epratuzumab	Autoimmune diseases
T cells	CD2	mAb humanized	Siplizumab	Psoriasis, graft-versus- host disease

a. Agents for autoimmune and allergic diseases

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

	CD3	mAb humanized	Visilizumab	IBD, diabetes mellitus (DM) type 1
		mAb murine	Muromonab-CD3	Rejection after transplantation
		mAb humanized	Teplizumab	DM type 1
	CD4	mAb chimeric/ humanized (hybrid rat/ human)	Otelixizumab	DM type
		mAb human	Zanolimumab	RA, psoriasis
		mAb humanized	Cedelizumab	Transplant rejection, autoimmune diseases
		mAb chimeric (primate/human)	Keliximab	Chronic asthma
		mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Priliximab	MS, Crohn disease
	CD11a (LFA-1) CD25 (IL-2 receptor)	mAb humanized	Efalizumab	Psoriasis
		mAb murine	Odulimomab	Prevention of organ transplant rejections, immunological diseases
		mAb humanized	Daclizumab	Ulcerative colitis (UC)
		mAb chimeric	Basiliximab (mouse/human)	UC
	CD52	mAb humanized	Alemtuzumab (Campath-1H)	MS
	CD58 (LFA-3)	Immunoglobulin fusion protein	Alefacept	Psoriasis
	CD134 (OX-40)	mAb human	Oxelumab	Asthma
	CD152 (CTLA-4)	Immunoglobulin fusion protein	Abatacept	Psoriasis, RA, MS
	CD154 (CD40L)	mAb humanized	Toralizumab	RA, lupus nephritis
		mAb humanized	Ruplizumab	SLE
Cytokine/ chemokine-	ΤΝFα	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Infliximab	RA, IBD, psoriasis-arthritis
related		mAb human	Adalimumab	RA, psoriasis, Crohn disease, spondylitis ankylosans (SA)

	Recombinant TNFα-receptor	Etanercept	RA
	mAb human	Golimumab	RA, SA, psoriasis
	Humanized ab to TNFα-fragment	Certolizumab (CPB870)	RA, Crohn disease
	mAb human	Golimumab	RA, SA, psoriatic arthritis
	Humanized, trivalent, bispecific nanobody containing two human TNF- binding domains linked to a human serum albumin-binding domain	Ozoralizumab	Inflammatory disorders
	mAb humanized	Certolizumab pegol	Crohn disease
TNFα, IL-2, IL-12, IFNγ	Decapeptide	RDP58	UC
IL-1	Receptor antagonist	Anankira	RA
IL-1β	mAb human	Canakinumab	RA, cryopyrin- associated periodic syndromes (CAPS)
	mAb humanized	Gevokizumab	DM type I
IL-4	mAb humanized	Pascolizumab	Asthma
IL-5	mAb humanized	Mepolizumab	Churg–Strauss syndrome, hypereosinophilic syndrome
	mAb humanized	Reslizumab	Inflammations of the airways, skin, gastrointestinal tract
IL-5 receptor (CD125)	mAb human	Benralizumab	Asthma
IL-6	mAb humanized	ALD518/ BMS-945429	RA
	mAb human	Sacrilumab	RA, SA

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

		mAb humanized	Siltuximab	SLE, dermatomyositis, polymyositis
		mAb human	Sirukumab	RA
	IL-6 receptor	mAb humanized	Tocilizumab	RA
		mAb against IL-6 receptor	Atlizumab	Crohn disease
	IL-9	mAb humanized	Enokizumab (MEDI-528)	Asthma
	IL-12	mAb human	ABT-874/J695	Crohn disease
	IL-12, IL-23	mAb human	Ustekinumab	Psoriasis, MS
		mAb human	Briakinumab	Psoriasis, RA, IBD, MS
	IL-13	mAb human	Tralokinumab	Asthma
		mAb humanized	Lebrikizumab	Asthma
		mAb humanized	Anrukinzumab (IMA-638)	Asthma
	IL-15	mAb human	HuMax	RA
	IL-17	mAb human	Brodalumab	Inflammatory diseases
	IL-17A	mAb humanized mAb human	Ixekizumab Secukinumab	Autoimmune diseases Uveitis, RA, psoriasis
	IL-22	mAb humanized	Fezakinumab	Psoriasis, RA
	IFN-α	mAb humanized	Rontalizumab	SLA
	IFN-γ	mAb humanized	Fontolizumab	Crohn disease
	TGF-β	mAb human	Fresolimumab	Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis, focal segmental glomerulosclerosis, cancer
	TGF-β1	mAb human	Metelimumab	Systemic sclerosis
	GM-CSF receptor (CAM-3001)	mAb human	Mavrilimumab (CAM-3001)	RA
	CCL11 (eotaxin-1)	mAb human	Bertilizumab	Severe allergic disorders
	CCL2 (MCP-1)	mAb human	Carlumab	Immune diseases, cancer
	CCR4	mAb humanized	Mogamulizumab	Asthma
Cell membrane	CD23 (IgE receptor)	mAb chimeric (primate/human)	Gomiliximab	Allergic asthma

Cell

Glossary of terms used in immunotoxicology

	CD5	mAb murine	Zolimomab	SLE, graft-versus-host disease
Extracellular antigens	IgE	mAb humanized mAb humanized	Talizumab Omalizumab	Allergic reactions Allergic asthma
b. Agents for	tumors			
Target class	Molecular target	Therapeutic agent	Name	Disease
Growth factors	Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)	mAb humanized	Bevacizumab	Colorectal carcinoma, bronchial carcinoma, breast cancer, macular degeneration
		F(ab')2 humanized	Alacizumab pegol	Cancer
	VEGF-R1	mAb human	Icrucumab	Solid tumors
	VEGF-R2	mAb human	Ramucirumab	Solid tumors
	EGFR	mAb chimeric ab (mouse/ human)	Cetuximab	Colorectal cancer, head and neck tumors
		mAb human	Panitumumab (ABX-EGF)	Colorectal cancer
		mAb human	Panitumumab	Colorectal cancer
		mAb human	Zalutumumab	Squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck
		mAb humanized	Matuzumab	Colorectal, lung, esophageal, stomach cancer
		mAb humanized	Nimotuzumab	Squamous cell carcinoma, head and neck cancer, malignant glioma, anaplastic astrocytoma, glioblastoma, nasopharyngeal cancer
		mAb human	Necitumumab	Non-small-cell lung carcinoma
		mAb human	Panitumumab	Colorectal cancer, solid tumors

	Insulin-like growth	mAb human	Cixutumumab	Solid tumors
	factor-1 receptor (IGF-1R) (CD221)	mAb human	Figitumumab	Adrenocortical carcinoma, non-small-cell lung carcinoma
		mAb human	Robatumumab	Cancer
		mAb human	Teprotumumab	Hematologic tumors
		mAb humanized	Dalotuzumab	Cancer
	Hepatocyte growth	mAb human	Rilotumumab	Solid tumors
	factor (HGF)	mAb humanized	Ficlatuzumab	Non-small-cell cancer, etc.
	Human epidermal growth factor	mAb humanized	Pertuzumab	Prostate, breast, ovarian cancer
	receptor 2 HER2/neu	mAb humanized	Trastuzumab	Breast cancer
	Nerve growth factor	Trifunctional antibody, rat/ mouse hybrid	Ertumaxomab	Breast cancer
		mAb human	Ganitumab	Cancer
Platelet-derived growth factor- receptor-α	mAb human	Olaratumab	Solid tumors	
B cells	B-lymphoma cell	mAb murine	Detumomab	Lymphoma
	B-cell activating factor (BAFF)	mAb human	Belimumab	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, etc.
		mAb human	Tabalumab	B-cell malignancies
	CD19	mAb murine	Taplitumomab paptox	Cancer
		Bispecific T-cell engager (BiTEs)	Blinatumomab	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, acute lymphoblastic leukemia
	CD20	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Rituximab	Non-Hodgkin B-cell lymphoma
		mAb, murine, ⁹⁰ Y-labelled	Ibritumomab- tiuxetan	Non-Hodgkin B-cell lymphoma (radioimmunotherapy)

	mAb, murine, ¹³¹ I-labelled	Tositumomab	Non-Hodgkin B-cell lymphoma (radioimmunotherapy)	
	mAb humanized	Ocrelizumab	Hematological cancer	
	mAb human	Ofatumumab	Chronic lymphatic leukemia (CLL), non-Hodgkin lymphoma, B-cell lymphoma	
	mAb murine	Ibritumomab- tiuxetan	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma	
	mAb murine	Tositumomab	Follicular lymphoma	
	mAb humanized	Afutuzumab (obinutuzumab)	Lymphoma	
	mAb humanized	Obinutuzumab (afutuzumab)	Lymphoma	
	mAb humanized	Veltuzumab	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma	
	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Ublituxumab	Cancer	
	mAb humanized	Veltuzumab	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, CLL	
	mAb humanized	Afutuzumab	Lymphoma	
	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Ublituximab	Cancer	
CD22	mAb humanized	Epratuzumab	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, ALL	
	mAb humanized	Inotuzumab ozogamicin	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma	
CD23	mAb, chimeric (primate/human)	Lumiliximab	CLL	
CD80	mAb chimeric (primate/human)	Galiximab	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma	
CD74	mAb humanized	Milatuzumab	MM, other hematological malignancies	
HLA-DR	mAb humanized	Apolizumab	Solid tumors, ALL, CLL, non-Hodgkin lymphoma	

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113-1295, 2012

	SLAMF7 (CD319)	mAb humanized	Elotuzumab (HuLuc63)	MM
T cells	CD4	mAb human	Zanolimumab	T-cell lymphoma
	$CD20 \times CD3$	Rat/mouse tri-specific	FBTA05	CLL
	CD25	mAb humanized	Alemtuzumab	CLL, T-cell lymphoma, ALL
	CD28	mAb humanized	TGN1412	Hematological malignancies, rheumatic disorders, MS
	CD33	mAb humanized (loaded with Calicheamicin)	Gemtuzumab- ozogamicin	AML
	CD52	mAb humanized	Alemtuzumab (Campath-1H)	CLL, T-cell lymphoma
	CD137 (4-1 BB)	mAb human	Urelumab	Cancer, solid tumors
	CD152 (CTLA-4)	mAb human	Ticilimumab (tremelimumab)	Melanoma, prostate cancer, bladder cancer
		mAb human	Tremelimuma, ticilimumab	Melanoma, prostate cancer, bladder cancer
		mAb human	Ipilimumab	Melanoma
Adhesion molecules	CD56 (neural cell adhesion molecule)	mAb humanized	Lorvotuzumab mertansine	Small-cell lung cancer (SCLC), MM, Merkel cell carcinoma (MCC), ovarian cancer, carcinoid and other neuroendocrine tumors
	Epithelial cell adhesion molecule	mAb humanized	Tucotuzumab celmoleukin	Cancer
	(EpCAM; CD326)	mAb humanized	Citatuzumab bogatox	Ovarian cancer, other solid tumors
	EpCAM, CD3	Antibody, rat/mouse trispecific	Catamaxomab	Ovarian cancer, malignant ascites, gastric cancer
	EpCAM (17-1A)	mAb murine	Edrecolomab	Colorectal carcinoma

Apoptosis molecules	Tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis- inducing ligand receptor 1 (TRAIL-R1)	mAb human	Mapatumumab	MM, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, solid tumors
	TRAIL-R2 (DR5, APO-2)	mAb human	Lexatumumab	Solid tumors
		mAb humanized	Tigatuzumab	Pancreatic, colorectal, non-small-cell lung, ovarian cancer
		mAb humanized	Tigatuzumab	Pancreatic, colorectal, non-small-cell lung, ovarian cancer
	TRAIL-R5 (DR5)	mAb human	Drozitumab	Cancer
	Tumor necrosis factor-like weak inducer of apoptosis receptor (TweakR; Fn14; TNFRSF12A)	mAb humanized	Enavatuzumab (PDL192)	Solid tumors
Cell membranes	Sphingosine-1- phosphate	mAb humanized	Sonepcizumab	Solid tumors, choroidal and retinal neovascularization
	Phosphatidylserine	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Bavituximab	Cancer, viral infections
	Human cell surface receptor RON; CD22	mAb human	Narnatumab	Cancer
	Glycoprotein 75	mAb human	Flanvotumab	Melanoma
	N-glycolyl- neuraminic acid (NGNA gangliosides GM3)	mAb murine	Racotumomab	Cancer
	Scatter factor receptor kinase	mAb humanized	Onartuzumab	Cancer
	Fibroblast activation protein alpha (FAP; Seprase)	mAb humanized	Sibrotuzumab	Cancer
	Gangliosides GD2	mAb murine	Mitumomab	Small-cell lung carcinoma

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

	mAb murine	3F8	Neuroblastoma
GD3	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Ecromeximab	Malignant melanoma
GD2/GD2 + GD3	Rat/mouse trispecific	TRBS 07	Melanoma
Tumor-associated antigen 5T4 (TAG-72)	mAB murine	Anatumomab mafenatox	Non-small-cell lung cancer, renal cell carcinoma
	mAb murine	Naptumomab estafenatox	Non-small-cell lung carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma
Imitates CA-125	mAb murine	Abagovomab	Ovarian cancer
CA-125	mAb murine	Oregovomab	Ovarian cancer
	mAb murine	Abagovomab	Ovarian cancer
Colorectal tumor antigen C242	mAb murine	Nacolomab tafenatox	Colorectal cancer
Mesothelin MORAb-009	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Amatuximab	Cancer
Colorectal and pancreatic carcinoma- associated antigen (NPC-1C)	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Ensituximab	Colorectal, pancreatic cancer
Carbonic anhydrase 9 (CA-IX)	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Girentuximab carcinoma	Clear-cell renal cell
Syndecan-1 (SDC1)	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Indatuximab ravtansine	Cancer
MUC1	mAb humanized	Clivatuzumab tetraxetan	Pancreatic cancer
Episialin/MUC-1	mAb murine	Pemtumomab	Ovarian cancer peritoneal cancer
	mAb murine	Epitumomab cituxetan	Breast cancer
	mAb humanized	Sontuzumab	
Mucin CanAg	mAb humanized	Cantuzumab mertansine	Colorectal cancer
Folate receptor 1	mAb humanized	Farletuzumab	Ovarian cancer
Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)	mAb humanized	Labetuzumab	Colorectal cancer

© 2012, IUPAC

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

	α-Fetoprotein	mAb humanized	Tacatuzumab tetraxetan	Cancer
	Transmembrane glycoprotein NMB (GPNMB)	mAb human	Glembatumumab vedotin (CDX-011, CR011- vcMMAE)	Melanoma, breast cancer
	CD23 (IgE receptor)	mAb chimeric (primate/human)	Lumiliximab	CLL
	CD30 (TNFRSF8)	mAb human	Iratumumab	Hodgkin lymphoma
		mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Brentuximab vedotin	Anaplastic large-cell lymphoma, Hodgkin lymphoma
	CD33	mAb humanized	Gemtuzumab ozogamicin	Acute myelogenous leukemia
		mAb humanized	Lintuzumab	Acute myeloid leukemia
	CD38 CD40	mAb human	Daratumumab	Hematological malignancies, including MM
		mAb human	Lucatumumab	MM, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, Hodgkin lymphoma
		mAb humanized	Dacetuzumab	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, hematological cancers
	CD44 v6	mAb humanized	Bivatuzumab mertansine	Squamous cell carcinoma
	CD200	mAb humanized	Samalizumab	Cancer
Cytokine/	IL-6	mAb murine	Elsilimomab	Lymphoma, myeloma
chemokine-	IL-13	mAb humanized	TNX-640	Hodgkin lymphoma
	CCR4	mAb humanized	Mogamulizumab	T-cell lymphoma
Cytoskeletal antigens	Vimentin	mAb human	Pritumumab	Brain cancer
Extracellular antigens	Tenascin C Fibronectin	mAb murine	Tenatumomab	Cancer
e e	extra-domain B	mAb human	Radretumab	Cancer

Target class	Molecular target	Therapeutic agent	Name	Disease
Viral/ bacterial/ fungal antigens	Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)	mAb humanized	Motavizumab	RSV infection
		mAb humanized	Felvizumab	RSV infection
	Epitope of the RSV F protein	mAb humanized	Palivizumab	RSV infection
	Influenza A hemagglutinin	mAb human	CR6261	Influenza A
	Hepatitis B surface antigen	mAb human	Exbivirumab	Hepatitis B
		mAb human	Libivirumab	Hepatitis B
	Rabies virus glycoprotein	mAb human	Foravirumab	Rabies (prophylaxis)
	Clumping factor A	mAb humanized	Tefibazumab	Staphylococcus aureus infection
	<i>Escherichia coli</i> Shiga-like toxin II B subunit	mAb humanized	Urtoxazumab	Diarrhea caused by <i>E. coli</i>
	Pseudomonas aeruginosa	mAb human	Panobacumab	P. aeruginosa infection
	Lipoteichoic acid	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Pagibaximab	Sepsis
	Endotoxin	mAb murine	Edobacomab	Sepsis caused by Gram-negative bacteria
	Anthrax toxin	mAb human	Raxibacumab	Anthrax
Cytokine/ chemokine- related	ΤΝFα	F(ab')2 murine	Afelimomab	Sepsis
T cells	CD4	mAb humanized	Ibalizumab	HIV infection
	CCR5	mAb humanized	PRO 140	HIV infection

c. Agents for infectious disorders

© 2012, IUPAC
Target class	Molecular target	Therapeutic agent	Name	Disease
Adhesion molecules	L-selectin (CD62L)	mAb humanized	Aselizumab	Post-traumatic inflammatory response in severely injured patients
	Integrin-β2 (ITGB2; CD18)	F(ab')2 humanized	Erlizumab	Heart attack, stroke, traumatic shock
	CD41 (integrin α-IIb)	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Abciximab	Platelet aggregation inhibitor; cardiovascular disease
	CD147 (basigin, neurothelin)	mAb murine	Gavilimomab	Graft-versus-host disease
	CD11, CD18	mAb humanized	Rovelizumab	Hemorrhagic shock
Cell membranes	Rhesus factor	mAb human	Morolimumab	Hemolytic disease of the newborn
		mAb human	Atorolimumab	Hemolytic disease of the newborn
	RHD (Rhesus blood group D antigen)	mAb human	Roledumab	Prevention of feto-maternal allo-immunization in RhD women
	Receptor activator of NF-κB (RANK) ligand (CD254)	mAb human	Denosumab	Bone metastasis, postmenopausal osteoporosis
Cytokine/ chemokine- related	TGFβ 2	mAb human	Lerdelimumab	Reduction of scarring after glaucoma surgery
	Sclerostin (Sost)	mAb humanized	Blosozumab	Osteoporosis
		mAb humanized	Romosozumab	Osteoporosis
Growth	VEGF-A	mAb humanized	Ranibizumab	Macular degeneration
factor	Human nerve growth factor (NGF)	mAb human	Fulranumab	Pain
		mAb humanized	Tanezumab	Pain
	Myostatin (growth differentiation factor 8)	mAb human	Stamulumab	Muscular dystrophy
T cells	CD25 (IL-2 receptor)	mAb murine	Inolinomab	Graft-versus-host disease

d. Agents for other disorders

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

D. M. TEMPLETON et al.

		mAb chimeric	Basiliximab	Transplant rejection
		mAb humanized	Daclizumab	Transplant rejection
Extracellular	1-40-β-Amyloid	mAb humanized	Crenezumab (MABT5102A)	Alzheimer disease
	β-Amyloid	mAb humanized	Ponezumab	Alzheimer disease
	β-Amyloid	mAb humanized	Solanezumab	Alzheimer disease
	β-Amyloid	mAb human	Gantenerumab	Alzheimer disease
	Complement factor 5 (C5)	mAb humanized	Eculizumab	Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria
		scFv	Pexelizumab	Reduction of side effects of cardiac surgery

e. Other monoclonal antibodies

Target class	Molecular target	Therapeutic agent	Name
Adhesion molecules	Integrin α2 (ITGA2)	mAb humanized	Vatelizumab
	Vascular adhesion protein 1 (VAP-1; amine oxidase, copper-containing 3; semicarbazide-sensitive amine oxidase)	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Vapaliximab
B cells	CD22	mAb murine	Moxetumomab pasudox
	CD6	mAb humanized	Itolizumab
Cell membranes	CD40	mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Teneliximab
	CD147 (basigin, neurothelin)	mAb human	Ziralimumab
	Neuropilin 1 (NRP1; membrane-bound coreceptor to a tyrosine kinase receptor for vascular endothelial growth factor)	mAb human	Vesencumab
	Tumor-associated glycoprotein (TAG)-72	mAb murine	Minretumomab
	Lymphotoxin-a	mAb humanized	Pateclizumab
Cytokine/	Interferon receptor	mAb murine	Faralimomab
chemokine-related	IL-6	mAb humanized	Olokizumab
		mAb chimeric (mouse/human)	Siltuximab

Pure Appl. Chem., Vol. 84, No. 5, pp. 1113–1295, 2012

Glossary of terms used in immunotoxicology

1295

	Granulocyte macrophage stimulating factor (CSF2)	mAb human	Namilumab
	ΤΝFα	mAb murine	Nerelimomab
Intracellular proteins	Reticulon-4 (RTN4)	mAb human	Atinumab
T cells	CD3 epsilon	mAb human	Foralumab
	T-cell receptor	mAb human	Maslimomab
	CD4	mAb humanized	Tregalizumab
	CD6	mAb humanized	Itolizumab